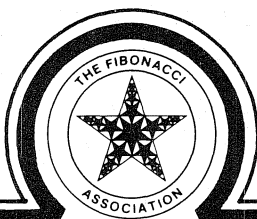


# The Fibonacci Quarterly

THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION

VOLUME 23  
NUMBER 1



FEBRUARY 1985  
SERIALS DEPT.

## CONTENTS

|  |   |    |
|--|---|----|
| A Path Counting Problem<br>in Digraphs .....   | Karel Zikan & Edward Schmeichel   | 3  |
| Pell and Pell-Lucas<br>Polynomials .....   | A.F. Horadam & Bro. J.M. Mahon  | 7  |
| A New Perspective to the Generalization of the<br>Fibonacci Sequence .....                         | Krassimir T. Atanassov,<br>Liliya C. Atanassova, & Dimitar D. Sassellov | 21 |
| Generating Functions of Fibonacci-Like Sequences and Decimal<br>Expansions of Some Fractions ..... | Gunter Kohler   | 29 |
| On $P_{r,k}$ Sequences .....   | S.P. Mohanty & A.M.S. Ramasamy  | 36 |
| A Congruence for a Class of<br>Exponential Numbers .....   | A. Kyriakoyssis   | 45 |
| Regeneration Points in Random Permutations .....   | A.J. Stam   | 49 |
| On Lucas Fundamental Functions and<br>Chebychev Polynomial Sequences .....                         | S. Pethe  | 57 |
| A Lucas Triangle Primality Criterion Dual to<br>that of Mann-Shanks .....                          | H.W. Gould & W.E. Greig   | 66 |
| Extensions of Some Results Concerning Odd<br>Perfect Numbers .....                                 | G.L. Cohen & R.J. Williams  | 70 |
| On Triangular Fibonacci Numbers .....  | Charles R. Wall   | 77 |
| Guessing Exact Solutions .....   | Charles R. Wall   | 80 |
| On the Reduction of a Linear Recurrence<br>of Order $r$ .....                                      | Dorin Andrica & Serban Buzeteanu  | 81 |
| Elementary Problems and<br>Solutions .....   | Edited by A.P. Hillman,<br>Gloria C. Padilla, & Charles R. Wall         | 85 |
| Advanced Problems and<br>Solutions .....   | Edited by Raymond E. Whitney  | 89 |

## PURPOSE

The primary function of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is to serve as a focal point for widespread interest in the Fibonacci and related numbers, especially with respect to new results, research proposals, challenging problems, and innovative proofs of old ideas.

## EDITORIAL POLICY

**THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** seeks articles that are intelligible yet stimulating to its readers, most of whom are university teachers and students. These articles should be lively and well motivated, with new ideas that develop enthusiasm for number sequences or the exploration of number facts. Illustrations and tables should be wisely used to clarify the ideas of the manuscript. Unanswered questions are encouraged, and a complete list of references is absolutely necessary.

## SUBMITTING AN ARTICLE

Articles should be submitted in the format of the current issues of the **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**. They should be typewritten or reproduced typewritten copies, that are clearly readable, double spaced with wide margins and on only one side of the paper. The full name and address of the author must appear at the beginning of the paper directly under the title. Illustrations should be carefully drawn in India ink on separate sheets of bond paper or vellum, approximately twice the size they are to appear in print.

Two copies of the manuscript should be submitted to: **GERALD E. BERGUM, EDITOR, THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY, DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, SOUTH DAKOTA STATE UNIVERSITY, BOX 2220, BROOKINGS, SD 57007-1297.**

Authors are encouraged to keep a copy of their manuscripts for their own files as protection against loss. The editor will give immediate acknowledgment of all manuscripts received.

## SUBSCRIPTIONS, ADDRESS CHANGE, AND REPRINT INFORMATION

Address all subscription correspondence, including notification of address change, to: **RICHARD VINE, SUBSCRIPTION MANAGER, THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION, UNIVERSITY OF SANTA CLARA, SANTA CLARA, CA 95053.**

Requests for reprint permission should be directed to the editor. However, general permission is granted to members of The Fibonacci Association for noncommercial reproduction of a limited quantity of individual articles (in whole or in part) provided complete references is made to the source.

Annual domestic Fibonacci Association membership dues, which include a subscription to **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**, are \$25 for Regular Membership, \$35 for Sustaining Membership, and \$65 for Institutional Membership; foreign rates, which are based on international mailing rates, are somewhat higher than domestic rates; please write for details. **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is published each February, May, August and November.

All back issues of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** are available in microfilm or hard copy format from **UNIVERSITY MICROFILMS INTERNATIONAL, 300 NORTH ZEEB ROAD, DEPT. P.R., ANN ARBOR, MI 48106.** Reprints can also be purchased from **UMI CLEARING HOUSE** at the same address.

1984 by

© The Fibonacci Association

All rights reserved, including rights to this journal issue as a whole and, except where otherwise noted, rights to each individual contribution.

# *The Fibonacci Quarterly*

Founded in 1963 by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. (1921-1980)  
Br. Alfred Brousseau, and I.D. Ruggles

*THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION  
DEVOTED TO THE STUDY  
OF INTEGERS WITH SPECIAL PROPERTIES*

## **EDITOR**

GERALD E. BERGUM, South Dakota State University, Brookings, SD 57007

## **ASSISTANT EDITORS**

MAXEY BROOKE, Sweeny, TX 77480  
PAUL F. BYRD, San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
LEONARD CARLITZ, Duke University, Durham, NC 27706  
HENRY W. GOULD, West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV 26506  
A.P. HILLMAN, University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM 87131  
A.F. HORADAM, University of New England, Armidale, N.S.W. 2351, Australia  
DAVID A. KLARNER, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, NE 68588  
JOHN RABUNG, Randolph-Macon College, Ashland, VA 23005  
DONALD W. ROBINSON, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602  
M.N.S. SWAMY, Concordia University, Montreal H3C 1M8, Quebec, Canada  
D.E. THORO, San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
THERESA VAUGHAN, University of North Carolina, Greensboro, NC 27412  
CHARLES R. WALL, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC 29411  
WILLIAM WEBB, Washington State University, Pullman, WA 99163

## **BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION**

CALVIN LONG (President)  
Washington State University, Pullman, WA 99163  
G.L. ALEXANDERSON  
University of Santa Clara, Santa Clara, CA 95053  
HUGH EDGAR (Vice-President)  
San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
MARJORIE JOHNSON (Secretary-Treasurer)  
Santa Clara Unified School District, Santa Clara, CA 95051  
LEONARD KLOSINSKI  
University of Santa Clara, Santa Clara, CA 95053  
JEFF LAGARIAS  
Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, NJ 07974

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

In addition to the members of the Board of Directors and our Assistant Editors, the following mathematicians, engineers, and physicists have assisted **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** by refereeing papers during the past year. Their special efforts are sincerely appreciated, and we apologize for any names that have inadvertently been overlooked.

ANDREWS, George E.  
Pennsylvania State Univ.  
ANDRICA, Dorin  
"Babes-Bolyai" Univ.  
ARKIN, Joseph  
Spring Valley, NY  
BACKSTROM, Robert P.  
GYMEA, New South Wales  
BARKAUSKAS, Anthony E.  
Univ. of Wisc./Lacrosse  
BASTIDA, Julio R.  
Florida Atlantic Univ.  
BERNDT, Bruce C.  
Urbana, IL  
BERZSENYI, George  
Lamar Univ.  
BRESSOUD, David M.  
Pennsylvania State Univ.  
BRUALDI, Richard  
Univ. of Wisc./Madison  
BURCKMAN, Paul S.  
Fair Oaks, CA  
BURKE, John  
Gonzaga Univ.  
BURTON, David M.  
Univ. of New Hampshire  
CASTELLANOS, Dario  
Valencia, Venezuela  
COHN, John H.E.  
Egham Surrey, England  
DAVIS, Philip J.  
Auburn Univ.  
DeLEON, M.J.  
Florida Atlantic Univ.  
DEO, Naisingh  
Washington State Univ.  
DUDLEY, Underwood  
DePauw Univ.  
DUNCAN, Robert L.  
Berwyn, PA  
ECKERT, Ernest J.  
Aalborg Univ.  
FERGUSON, Thomas S.  
U.C.L.A.

FERGUSON, Helaman  
Princeton Univ.  
FIELDER, Daniel C.  
Georgia Inst. of Tech.  
FLANIGAN, James  
Pacific Palisades, CA  
FUCHS, Eduard  
Univ. of J.E. Purkyne  
GEORGHIOU, C.  
Univ. of Patras  
GESSEL, Ira M.  
M.I.T.  
GRATZER, George A.  
Univ. of Manitoba  
GUPTA, Hansraj  
Allahabad, India  
HAGIS, Peter, Jr.  
Temple Univ.  
HANSEN, Rodney T.  
Whitworth College  
HAYES, David F.  
San Jose State Univ.  
HOWARD, F.T.  
Wake Forest Univ.  
KALMAN, Dan  
Sioux Falls, SD  
KERR, J.R.  
Univ. of Singapore  
KOHLEER, Gunter  
Univ. of Wurzburg  
KONHAUSER, Joseph D.E.  
Macalester College  
LIVINGSTON, Marilyn L.  
Southern Illinois Univ.  
LORD, Graham  
Princeton, NJ  
MACBEATH, A.M.  
Univ. of Pittsburgh  
MINOLI, Daniel  
ITT, Inc., NY  
NAJAR, R.M.  
Univ. of Wisc.  
PHARES, A.J.  
Villanova Univ.

PHILIPPOU, Andreas N.  
Univ. of Patras  
QUINN, Michael  
Washington State Univ.  
RICHERT, Norman J.  
Marquette Univ.  
RIDDELL, James  
Univ. of Victoria  
ROBBINS, Neville  
San Francisco State Univ.  
ROBERTS, Joseph B.  
Reed College  
SCHWENK, Allen John  
U.S. Naval Academy  
SHALLIT, J.O.  
Univ. of Chicago  
SHANNON, A.G.  
N.S.W. Inst. of Tech.  
SMITH, John  
Cambridge, England  
SNOW, Donald R.  
Brigham Young Univ.  
SOMER, Lawrence  
Washington, D.C.  
St. JOHN, Peter H.  
Computer Science Corp.  
SUBBARAO, M.V.  
Univ. of Alberta  
SUN, Hugo S.  
Calif. State Univ./Fresno  
TAYLOR, Richard  
Cambridge, England  
THOMAS, Emery  
Univ. of Calif./Berkeley  
TURNER, Stephen John  
Babson College  
VAUGHAN, Theresa P.  
Univ. of North Carolina  
WADDILL, Marcellus E.  
Wake Forest Univ.  
WALTON, J.E.  
Northern Rivers College  
WILSON, Richard M.  
Calif. Inst. of Tech.



# A PATH COUNTING PROBLEM IN DIGRAPHS

KAREL ZIKAN and EDWARD SCHMEICHEL

San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192

(Submitted June 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

In this paper, we consider only directed graphs without loops or multiple edges. Our terminology and notation will be standard except as noted. A good reference for any undefined terms is [1].

Our main goal is to determine the maximum possible number of directed paths between a pair of vertices in an acyclic digraph with  $m$  edges (and any number of vertices). Denoting this maximum possible number by  $N(m)$ , we will establish that

$$N(m) = \begin{cases} F_{(m+1)/2} & \text{for } m \text{ odd} \\ 1 & \text{for } m = 2 \\ 2F_{(m/2)-1} & \text{for } m \geq 4 \text{ and even} \end{cases}$$

where  $F$  satisfies the recurrence relation

$$F_k = F_{k-1} + F_{k-2}, \quad F_1 = 1, \quad F_2 = 2.$$

The actual proof of this formula will be preceded by a sequence of five easy lemmas.

We then conclude with a brief discussion of the following related question: Given a positive integer  $k$ , what is the least number of edges in an acyclic digraph having *exactly*  $k$  directed paths between a pair of vertices.

## 2. PROOFS OF THE LEMMAS AND MAIN RESULT

### Lemma 1

Let  $D$  be an acyclic digraph. Then  $D$  contains vertices  $\alpha$  and  $z$  such that indegree  $\alpha$  = outdegree  $z$  = 0. (We call  $\alpha$  and  $z$ , respectively, a source and a sink of  $D$ .)

Proof: Let  $x \in V(D)$ . Consider a longest path directed away from  $x$ , say from  $x$  to  $z$ . Then outdegree  $z$  = 0 (since any edge leaving  $z$  would yield either a longer directed path away from  $x$  or a directed cycle in  $D$ ).

The proof that indegree  $\alpha$  = 0 for some  $\alpha \in V(D)$  is entirely analogous. ■

### Lemma 2

Let  $D$  be an acyclic digraph. Then the vertices of  $D$  can be ordered, say 1, 2, ...,  $n$ , such that every edge in  $D$  is of the form  $(i, j)$ , where  $i < j$ .

Proof: We proceed by induction on  $n = |V(D)|$ . The result is trivially true for  $n = 2$ . For the induction step, choose any  $z \in V(D)$  with outdegree  $z$  = 0 (one exists by Lemma 1), and consider the digraph  $D - z$ . By the induction hypothesis, the vertices of  $D - z$  can be ordered, say 1, 2, ...,  $n - 1$ ,

# A PATH COUNTING PROBLEM IN DIGRAPHS

in the manner described. If we let  $z$  be the  $n^{\text{th}}$  vertex, we have the desired ordering of  $V(D)$ . ■

In what follows, we assume  $D$  is an acyclic digraph with vertices ordered  $1, 2, \dots, n$  such that every edge of  $D$  is of the form  $(i, j)$ , where  $i < j$ .

For any  $x \in V(D)$ , let  $p_D(x)$  denote the number of directed paths from 1 to  $x$  in  $D$ . [When  $D$  is clear from context, we will use just  $p(x)$  for this number.]

## Lemma 3

Suppose  $D$  has a set of vertices  $S = \{i < \dots < j < k\}$ , with  $1 < i < k \leq n$ , which induces a tournament (i.e., a digraph with every pair of vertices joined by precisely one edge). Then

$$p(k) \geq p(i) + \dots + p(j).$$

Proof: For each  $x \in S$ , let  $P(x)$  denote the set of directed paths from 1 to  $x$ . If  $x \neq k$ , let  $P'(x)$  denote the set of directed paths from 1 to  $k$  obtained by taking a path from 1 to  $x$  together with the edges  $(x, k)$ . Then, clearly,

$$P'(i) \cup \dots \cup P'(j) \subseteq P(k),$$

and the sets on the left side are disjoint. Since

$$|P'(x)| = |P(x)| = p(x),$$

it follows at once that

$$p(i) + \dots + p(j) \leq p(k). \quad \blacksquare$$

Let  $N(m)$  denote the maximum possible number of directed paths between two vertices of an acyclic digraph with  $m$  edges. Certainly  $N(m)$  is a nondecreasing function of  $m$ . Let us call an acyclic digraph on  $m$  edges having precisely  $N(m)$  directed paths between some pair of vertices a *path maximum  $m$ -graph*. It is easily seen that there will be a path maximum  $m$ -graph  $D$  with the vertices ordered as in Lemma 2 such that 1 and  $n$  are joined by precisely  $N(m)$  directed paths, and 1 (resp.,  $n$ ) is the unique source (resp., sink) in  $D$ . We will assume this property for the path maximum  $m$ -graphs we consider in what follows.

## Lemma 4

There exists a path maximum  $m$ -graph  $D$  in which

$$\{x \in V(D) \mid (x, n) \in E(D)\}$$

(i.e., the predecessors of  $n$  in  $D$ ) induce a tournament.

Proof: Otherwise, let  $i, j$  be two predecessors of  $n$  (with say  $i < j$ ) such that  $(i, j) \notin E(D)$ . Form the digraph

$$D' = D - (i, n) + (i, j).$$

To each directed path in  $D$  from 1 to  $n$  containing the edge  $(i, n)$  there corresponds uniquely a directed path in  $D'$  from 1 to  $n$  containing the edges  $(i, j)$  and  $(j, n)$ . Hence,  $p_{D'}(n) \geq p_D(n)$ , and so  $D'$  is also a path maximum  $m$ -graph in which  $n$  has one less predecessor than in  $D$ . We simply iterate this procedure until we obtain a path maximum  $m$ -graph with the desired properties. ■

## Lemma 5

If  $m \geq 3$ , there exists a path maximum  $m$ -graph in which  $n$  has indegree 2.

# A PATH COUNTING PROBLEM IN DIGRAPHS

Proof: Let  $D$  be a path maximum  $m$ -graph in which the predecessors of  $n$  (ordered say  $1 < \dots < j < k$ ) induce a tournament. By Lemma 3,

$$p(k) \geq p(i) + \dots + p(j).$$

Hence,

$$2p(k) \geq p(i) + \dots + p(j) + p(k) = p(n) = N(m).$$

If indegree  $n \geq 3$ , we can construct a new acyclic digraph  $D'$  with  $m$  edges, as shown in Figure 1. Note that

$$p_{D'}(n') = 2p(k) \geq N(m),$$

and hence  $D'$  is also a path maximum  $m$ -graph. But indegree  $_{D'} n' = 2$ , and the proof is complete. ■

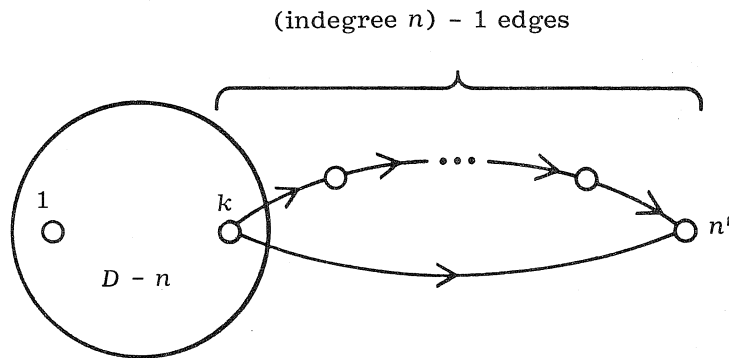


Figure 1. The Digraph  $D'$

We now state and prove our main result.

## Theorem

Let  $m$  be a positive integer. Then

$$N(m) = \begin{cases} F_{(m+1)/2} & \text{for } m \text{ odd} \\ 1 & \text{for } m = 2 \\ 2F_{(m/2)-1} & \text{for } m \geq 4 \text{ and even} \end{cases}$$

where  $F_k$  is the Fibonacci number satisfying  $F_k = F_{k-1} + F_{k-2}$ ,  $F_1 = 1$ ,  $F_2 = 2$ .

Proof: It is readily verified that

$$N(1) = N(2) = 1, N(3) = N(4) = 2, N(5) = 3, N(6) = 4,$$

and so the formula holds for  $m \geq 6$ . We thus proceed by induction on  $m \geq 7$ .

Since the digraphs in Figure 2 contain  $m$  edges, and have as many dipaths from 1 to  $n$  as the number specified in the formula, it suffices to show the numbers in the formula are upper bounds for  $N(m)$ .

By Lemma 5 there is a path maximum  $m$ -graph  $D$  in which the indegree of  $n$  is 2. Let  $x, y$  denote the predecessors of  $n$  in  $D$ , with say  $x < y$ . We then have precisely three possibilities:

- (i)  $(x, y) \notin E(D)$  (Using the construction in the proof of Lemma 4, we could obtain a path maximum  $m$ -graph in which  $n$  has indegree 1.)

# A PATH COUNTING PROBLEM IN DIGRAPHS

- (ii)  $(x, y) \in E(D)$ , and  $x$  is the only predecessor of  $y$ .
- (iii)  $(x, y) \in E(D)$ , and  $x$  is not the only predecessor of  $y$ .

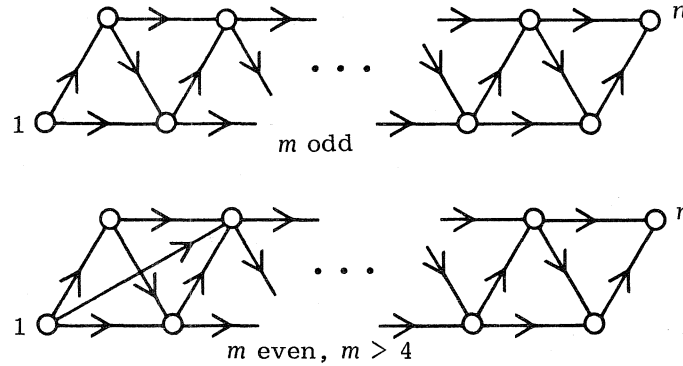


Figure 2. Path Maximum  $m$ -Graphs

By considering the maximum possible number of dipaths from the source to  $x$  and  $y$  in cases (i), (ii), and (iii), respectively, we get

$$N(m) \leq \max\{N(m-1), 2N(m-3), N(m-2) + N(m-4)\}.$$

Using the induction hypothesis, and the fact that  $m \geq 7$ , we obtain

$$N(m) \leq \begin{cases} \max\{2F_{(m-3)/2}, 4F_{(m-5)/2}, F_{(m-1)/2} + F_{(m-3)/2}\} = F_{(m+1)/2}, & \text{if } m \text{ odd,} \\ \max\{F_{(m/2)}, 2F_{(m/2)-1}, 2F_{(m/2)-2} + 2F_{(m/2)-3}\} = 2F_{(m/2)-1}, & \text{if } m \text{ even.} \end{cases}$$

The inductive step, and hence the proof of the theorem, are now complete. ■

## 3. A RELATED PROBLEM

The authors have also considered the following problem: Given a positive integer  $k$ , what is the least number of edges in an acyclic digraph having *exactly*  $k$  paths between some pair of vertices? Noting the  $N(m)$  is nondecreasing in  $m$ , it seems reasonable to conjecture that if  $N(m-1) < k \leq N(m)$ , then  $m$  is the minimum number of edges required. This conjecture is indeed true for  $k \leq 32$ . However,  $N(14) < 33 < N(15)$ , and we have shown that at least 16 edges are needed in any digraph having exactly 33 directed paths between a pair of vertices. Although it appears that a complete solution to this problem may be very difficult, we have the following conjecture to offer:

Conjecture: Let  $k_n$  be the smallest integer such that  $N(m-1) < k_n < N(m)$ , but at least  $m+n$  edges are needed in any digraph with precisely  $k_n$  directed paths between a pair of vertices. Then  $k_n$  satisfies the recurrence relation  $k_n = 34k_{n-1} + 21$ ,  $k_1 = 33$ .

## REFERENCE

1. M. Behzad, G. Chartrand, & L. Lesniak-Foster. *Graphs and Digraphs*. Boston, Mass.: Prindle, Weber and Schmidt, 1979.

◆◆◆◆

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

A. F. HORADAM

University of New England, Armidale, Australia

Bro. J. M. MAHON

Catholic College of Education, Sydney, Australia

(Submitted June 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The object of this paper is to record some properties of *Pell polynomials*  $P_n(x)$  and *Pell-Lucas polynomials*  $Q_n(x)$  defined by the recurrence relations

$$P_{n+2}(x) = 2xP_{n+1}(x) + P_n(x) \quad P_0(x) = 0, P_1(x) = 1 \quad (1.1)$$

and

$$Q_{n+2}(x) = 2xQ_{n+1}(x) + Q_n(x) \quad Q_0(x) = 2, Q_1(x) = 2x. \quad (1.2)$$

Initially, the polynomials are defined for  $n \geq 0$  but their existence for  $n < 0$  is readily extended, yielding

$$P_{-n}(x) = (-1)^{n+1}P_n(x) \quad (1.3)$$

and

$$Q_{-n}(x) = (-1)^n Q_n(x). \quad (1.4)$$

Some of these polynomials are:

$$\begin{cases} P_2(x) = 2x, & P_3(x) = 4x^2 + 1, & P_4(x) = 8x^3 + 4x, \\ P_5(x) = 16x^4 + 12x^2 + 1, & P_6(x) = 32x^5 + 32x^3 + 6x, \dots; \end{cases} \quad (1.5)$$

$$\begin{cases} Q_2(x) = 4x^2 + 2, & Q_3(x) = 8x^3 + 6x, & Q_4(x) = 16x^4 + 16x^2 + 2, \\ Q_5(x) = 32x^5 + 40x^3 + 10x, & Q_6(x) = 64x^6 + 96x^4 + 36x^2 + 2, \dots \end{cases} \quad (1.6)$$

Important special numerical cases are:  $P_n(1) = P_n$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Pell number*;  $Q_n(1) = Q_n$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Pell-Lucas number*;  $P_n(\frac{1}{2}) = F_n$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Fibonacci number*; and  $Q_n(\frac{1}{2}) = L_n$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Lucas number*. Furthermore,  $P_n(\frac{1}{2}x) = F_n(x)$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Fibonacci polynomial*, and  $Q_n(\frac{1}{2}x) = L_n(x)$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *Lucas polynomial* (see [2]).

Following standard procedures, we easily obtain the *Binet forms*

$$P_n(x) = \frac{\alpha^n - \beta^n}{\alpha - \beta} \quad (1.7)$$

and

$$Q_n(x) = \alpha^n + \beta^n, \quad (1.8)$$

where

$$\begin{cases} \alpha = x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \\ \beta = x - \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \end{cases} \quad (1.9)$$

are the roots of

$$\lambda^2 - 2x\lambda - 1 = 0, \quad (1.10)$$

so that

$$\alpha + \beta = 2x, \alpha - \beta = 2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}, \alpha\beta = -1. \quad (1.11)$$

## PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

The generating functions for the infinite sets of polynomials  $\{P_n(x)\}$  and  $\{Q_n(x)\}$  are found in the usual way to be

$$\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} P_{r+1}(x)y^r = \frac{1}{1 - 2xy - y^2} \quad (1.12)$$

and

$$\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} Q_{r+1}(x)y^r = \frac{2x + 2y}{1 - 2xy - y^2}. \quad (1.13)$$

Results involving these generating functions are not developed here.

### 2. ELEMENTARY PROPERTIES OF $P_n(x)$ , $Q_n(x)$

Important elementary relationships involving  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  follow without difficulty with the aid of (1.7)-(1.11). Some of these are:

$$P_{n+1}(x) + P_{n-1}(x) = Q_n(x) = 2xP_n(x) + 2P_{n-1}(x) \quad (2.1)$$

$$Q_{n+1}(x) + Q_{n-1}(x) = 4(x^2 + 1)P_n(x) \quad (2.2)$$

$$P_n(x)Q_n(x) = P_{2n}(x) \quad (2.3)$$

$$Q_{2n}(x) = \frac{1}{2}\{Q_n^2(x) + 4(x^2 + 1)P_n^2(x)\} \quad (2.4)$$

$$P_{n+1}(x)P_{n-1}(x) - P_n^2(x) = (-1)^n \quad (2.5)$$

$$Q_{n+1}(x)Q_{n-1}(x) - Q_n^2(x) = (-1)^{n-1}4(x^2 + 1) \quad (2.6)$$

$$P_{n+1}^2(x) - P_{n-1}^2(x) = 2xP_{2n}(x) \text{ by (1.1), (2.1), (2.3)} \quad (2.7)$$

$$4(x^2 + 1)P_n^2(x) - Q_n^2(x) = 4(-1)^{n-1} \quad (2.8)$$

Formula (2.3) is useful in establishing divisibility properties of the polynomials. Geometrical paradoxes can be constructed from (2.5) when numerical values of  $x$  are inserted.

Summations of an elementary nature are obtained in the usual manner. The simplest are:

$$\sum_{r=1}^n P_{2r}(x) = (P_{2n+1}(x) - 1)/2x \quad (2.9)$$

$$\sum_{r=1}^n P_{2r-1}(x) = P_{2n}(x)/2x \quad (2.10)$$

$$\sum_{r=1}^n P_r(x) = (P_{n+1}(x) + P_n(x) - 1)/2x \text{ by (2.9), (2.10)} \quad (2.11)$$

$$\sum_{r=1}^n Q_{2r}(x) = (Q_{2n+1}(x) - 2x)/2x \quad (2.12)$$

$$\sum_{r=1}^n Q_{2r-1}(x) = (Q_{2n}(x) - 2)/2x \quad (2.13)$$

$$\sum_{r=1}^n Q_r(x) = (Q_{n+1}(x) + Q_n(x) - 2 - 2x)/2x \text{ by (2.12), (2.13)} \quad (2.14)$$

Extensions and variations of these finite summations, e.g.,  $\sum_{r=1}^n r^2 P_r(x)$  and  $\sum_{r=1}^n (-1)^r Q_r(x)$ , are omitted in this treatment of the polynomials.

Induction can be used, with a little effort, to establish the explicit expressions

$$P_n(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\left\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{n-m-1}{m} (2x)^{n-2m-1} \quad (2.15)$$

and

$$Q_n(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor} \frac{n}{n-m} \binom{n-m}{m} (2x)^{n-2m}, \quad n \neq 0, \quad (2.16)$$

where, in (2.16) we used the combinatorial identity

$$\frac{n}{n-m} \binom{n-m}{m} + \frac{n-1}{n-m} \binom{n-m}{m-1} = \frac{n+1}{n-m+1} \binom{n-m+1}{m}.$$

We proceed to prove (2.15).

Proof of (2.15): The formula is trivially true for  $n = 1$  and  $n = 2$ . Assume it is true for  $n = k$  and  $n = k - 1$  where  $k \geq 3$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} P_{k+1}(x) &= 2xP_k(x) + P_{k-1}(x) \quad \text{by (1.1)} \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\left\lfloor \frac{k-1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{k-m-1}{m} (2x)^{k-2m} + \sum_{m=0}^{\left\lfloor \frac{k-2}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{k-m-2}{m} (2x)^{k-2m-2}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $k = 2t$ , this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum_{m=0}^{t-1} \binom{2t-m-1}{m} (2x)^{2t-2m} + \sum_{m=0}^{t-1} \binom{2t-m-2}{m} (2x)^{2t-2m-2} \\ &= \binom{2t-1}{0} (2x)^{2t} + \binom{2t-2}{1} (2x)^{2t-2} + \binom{2t-3}{2} (2x)^{2t-4} + \cdots + \binom{t}{t-1} (2x)^2 \\ &\quad + \binom{2t-2}{0} (2x)^{2t-2} + \binom{2t-3}{1} (2x)^{2t-4} + \cdots + \binom{t}{t-2} (2x)^2 + \binom{t-1}{t-1} \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^t \binom{2t-m}{m} (2x)^{2t-2m} = \sum_{m=0}^{\lfloor k/2 \rfloor} \binom{k-m}{m} (2x)^{k-2m} \end{aligned}$$

by using Pascal's formula. Similarly, it holds if  $k$  is odd, and the proof is completed.

Basic relationships involving  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  may be obtained from these combinatorial formulas, but the calculations required are tedious. Binet forms produce the same results more quickly.

In passing, we note the differential calculus result:

$$\frac{dQ_n(x)}{dx} = 2nP_n(x). \quad (2.17)$$

Later, in (6.20), we shall see that the first derivative of  $P_n(x)$  is given in terms of a (complex) Gegenbauer polynomial.

Because  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  are generalizations of  $F_n$  and  $L_n$ , the collection of miscellaneous results for  $F_n$  and  $L_n$  given in [7] may be generalized; e.g.,

$$Q_{4n}(x) - 2 = 4(x^2 + 1)P_{2n}^2(x), \quad (2.18)$$

$$P_{n-1}(x)P_{n+1}(x) + Q_{n-1}(x)Q_{n+1}(x) = (4x^2 + 5)P_n^2(x) + (-1)^{n-1}(4x^2 - 1), \quad (2.19)$$

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

and

$$\sum_{k=0}^{2n+1} \binom{2n+1}{k} P_{2k+p}(x) = [4(x^2 + 1)]^n Q_{2n+p+1}(x). \quad (2.20)$$

## 3. MATRIX GENERATION OF FORMULAS

We demonstrate that the matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 2x & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.1)$$

generates Pell polynomials and Pell-Lucas polynomials, and use it to establish some elementary properties of these polynomials.

Induction, with (1.1), leads to

$$P^n = \begin{bmatrix} P_{n+1}(x) & P_n(x) \\ P_n(x) & P_{n-1}(x) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.2)$$

whence

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_{n+1}(x) \\ P_n(x) \end{bmatrix} = P^n \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.3)$$

and

$$P_n(x) = [1 \quad 0] P^{n-1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.4)$$

The characteristic equation of  $P$  is

$$\lambda^2 - 2x\lambda - 1 = 0 \quad (3.5)$$

with eigenvalues

$$\begin{cases} \alpha = x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \\ \beta = x - \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \end{cases} \quad (3.6)$$

By the division algorithm for polynomials,

$$\lambda^n = (\lambda^2 - 2x\lambda - 1)f(\lambda) + m\lambda + k, \quad (3.7)$$

where  $f(\lambda)$  is of degree  $n-2$  in  $\lambda$  and  $m, k$  are functions of  $x$ .

Put  $\lambda = \alpha$  in (3.7). Then

$$\alpha^n = m\alpha + k. \quad (3.8)$$

Similarly,

$$\beta^n = m\beta + k. \quad (3.9)$$

Solving (3.8) and (3.9) yields

$$m = \frac{\alpha^n - \beta^n}{\alpha - \beta}, \quad k = \frac{\alpha^{n-1} - \beta^{n-1}}{\alpha - \beta}. \quad (3.10)$$



# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

From (3.8)

$$P^n = mP + kI. \quad (3.11)$$

Equate the top right elements in (3.11) to obtain  $m = P_n(x)$  so that the Binet form (1.7) for  $P_n(x)$  is again produced from (3.10).

Use of (2.1) gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} Q_{n+1}(x) \\ Q_n(x) \end{bmatrix} = P^n \begin{bmatrix} 2x \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.12)$$

and

$$Q_n(x) = [1 \quad 0]P^{n-1} \begin{bmatrix} 2x \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.13)$$

To illustrate the matrix technique, we prove

$$P_{m+n}(x) = P_{m-1}(x)P_n(x) + P_m(x)P_{n+1}(x) \quad (3.14)$$

for

$$\begin{aligned} P_{m-1}(x)P_n(x) + P_m(x)P_{n+1}(x) &= [P_m(x), \quad P_{m-1}(x)] \begin{bmatrix} P_{n+1}(x) \\ P_n(x) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= [P_m(x), \quad P_{m-1}(x)]P^n \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ by (3.3)} \\ &= [1 \quad 0]P^{m+n-1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ by (3.3) and } P^m P^n = P^{m+n} \\ &= P_{m+n}(x) \text{ by (3.4).} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly

$$Q_{m+n}(x) = P_{m-1}(x)Q_n(x) + P_m(x)Q_{n+1}(x). \quad (3.15)$$

From (3.14) and (3.15) with (3.2) and (3.12), we derive

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_{n+r}(x) \\ P_n(x) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} P_r(x) & P_{r-1}(x) \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} P^n \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.16)$$

and

$$\begin{bmatrix} Q_{n+r}(x) \\ Q_n(x) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} P_r(x) & P_{r-1}(x) \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} P^n \begin{bmatrix} 2x \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.17)$$

Equation (3.14), including an interchange of  $m$  and  $n$ , in conjunction with (2.1) gives

$$P_{m+n}(x) = \frac{1}{2}\{P_m(x)Q_n(x) + P_n(x)Q_m(x)\}, \quad (3.18)$$

while (3.15), including a replacement of  $m$  by  $m+1$  and  $n$  by  $n-1$ , with (2.1) and (2.2) gives

$$Q_{m+n}(x) = \frac{1}{2}\{Q_m(x)Q_n(x) + 4(x^2 + 1)P_m(x)P_n(x)\}. \quad (3.19)$$

Putting  $m = n$  in (3.18) and (3.19) yields (2.3) and (2.4). Further,

$$P_{n+1}^2(x) + P_n^2(x) = P_{2n+1}(x) \quad (3.20)$$

since

$$\begin{aligned} P_{n+1}^2(x) + P_n^2(x) &= [P_{n+1}(x), P_n(x)] \begin{bmatrix} P_{n+1}(x) \\ P_n(x) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= [1 \quad 0] P^{2n} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ by (3.2) and (3.3)} \\ &= P_{2n+1}(x) \text{ by 3.4.} \end{aligned}$$

Result (3.20) also follows directly from (3.14) with  $m = n + 1$ .

Similarly,

$$Q_{n+1}^2(x) + Q_n^2(x) = 4(x^2 + 1)P_{2n+1}(x). \quad (3.21)$$

All the above results can, of course, be derived by using the Binet forms (1.7) and (1.8). Techniques employed in these sections give rise to the following formulas:

$$P_{n+r}(x) + P_{n-r}(x) = \begin{cases} P_n(x)Q_r(x) & \text{if } r \text{ is even} \\ Q_n(x)P_r(x) & \text{if } r \text{ is odd} \end{cases} \quad (3.22)$$

$$Q_{n+r}(x) + Q_{n-r}(x) = \begin{cases} Q_n(x)Q_r(x) & r \text{ even} \\ 4(x^2 + 1)P_n(x)P_r(x) & r \text{ odd} \end{cases} \quad (3.23)$$

$$P_{n+r}(x) - P_{n-r}(x) = \begin{cases} Q_n(x)P_r(x) & r \text{ even} \\ P_n(x)Q_r(x) & r \text{ odd} \end{cases} \quad (3.24)$$

$$Q_{n+r}(x) - Q_{n-r}(x) = \begin{cases} 4(x^2 + 1)P_n(x)P_r(x) & r \text{ even} \\ Q_n(x)Q_r(x) & r \text{ odd} \end{cases} \quad (3.25)$$

$$P_{n+r}^2(x) - P_{n-r}^2(x) = P_{2n}(x)P_{2r}(x) \text{ by (3.22), (3.24) and (2.3)} \quad (3.26)$$

$$Q_{n+r}^2(x) - Q_{n-r}^2(x) = 4(x^2 + 1)P_{2n}(x)P_{2r}(x) \text{ by (3.23), (3.25), and (2.3)} \quad (3.27)$$

$$P_{mn+r}(x) = \begin{cases} P_n(x)Q_{(m-1)n+r}(x) + (-1)^n P_{(m-2)n+r}(x) \\ P_{(m-1)n+r}(x)Q_n(x) + (-1)^{n-1} P_{(m-2)n+r}(x) \end{cases} \quad (3.28)$$

$$Q_{mn+r}(x) = Q_{(m-1)n+r}(x)Q_n(x) + (-1)^{n-1} Q_{(m-2)n+r}(x) \quad (3.29)$$

$$P_{n+r}^2(x) - P_{n+r}(x)P_{n-r}(x) = (-1)^{n-r} P_r^2(x) \quad (3.30)$$

$$Q_{n+r}^2(x) - Q_{n+r}(x)Q_{n-r}(x) = (-1)^{n-r+1} 4(x^2 + 1)P_r^2(x) \quad (3.31)$$

$$P_{n+h}(x)P_{n+k}(x) - P_n(x)P_{n+h+k}(x) = (-1)^n P_h(x)P_k(x) \quad (3.32)$$

*Simson formulas*

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

$$Q_{n+h}(x)Q_{n+k}(x) - Q_n(x)Q_{n+h+k}(x) = (-1)^{n-1}4(x^2 + 1)P_h(x)P_k(x) \quad (3.33)$$

$$P_{n+h}(x)Q_{n+k}(x) - P_n(x)Q_{n+h+k}(x) = (-1)^n P_h(x)Q_k(x) \quad (3.34)$$

Finally, we offer two relationships that can be described as being of the *de Moivre* type:

$$\{Q_n(x) + 2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}P_n(x)\}^r = 2^{r-1}\{Q_{nr}(x) + 2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}P_{nr}(x)\} \quad (3.35)$$

$$\{Q_n(x) - 2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}P_n(x)\}^r = 2^{r-1}\{Q_{nr}(x) - 2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}P_{nr}(x)\}. \quad (3.36)$$

When  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ , (3.35) and (3.36) reduce to

$$\left\{\frac{L_n + \sqrt{5}F_n}{2}\right\}^r = \frac{L_{nr} + \sqrt{5}F_{nr}}{2} \quad (3.37)$$

and

$$\left\{\frac{L_n - \sqrt{5}F_n}{2}\right\}^r = \frac{L_{nr} - \sqrt{5}F_{nr}}{2}, \quad (3.38)$$

respectively, the first of which is given in [7, p. 60].

Results involving  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  are as multitudinous as the sands of the seashore, and one can gather these grains *ad infinitum*, *ad nauseam*.

## 4. PASCAL ARRAYS GENERATING $P_n(x)$ , $Q_n(x)$

Consider the following table.

Table 1: Pell Polynomials from Rising Diagonals

| $\begin{smallmatrix} m \\ n \end{smallmatrix}$ | 1                | 2                | 3                | 4                | 5   | 6 ... |
|--|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----|-------|
| 1  | 1                |                  |                  |                  |     |       |
| 2  | 2x               | 1                |                  |                  |     |       |
| 3  | 4x <sup>2</sup>  | 4x               | 1                |                  |     |       |
| 4  | 8x <sup>3</sup>  | 12x <sup>2</sup> | 6x               | 1                |     |       |
| 5  | 16x <sup>4</sup> | 32x <sup>3</sup> | 24x <sup>2</sup> | 8x               | 1   |       |
| 6  | 32x <sup>5</sup> | 80x <sup>4</sup> | 80x <sup>3</sup> | 40x <sup>2</sup> | 10x | 1     |
| ⋮  |                  |                  |                  |                  |     |       |

(4.1)

Denote the coefficient of the power of  $x$  in the  $m^{\text{th}}$  row and  $n^{\text{th}}$  column by  $(m, n)$ .

It is now shown that the rising diagonals presented in Table 1 produce the Pell polynomial (1.5).

Define the entries in row  $m$  as the terms in the expansion  $(2x+1)^{m-1}$ , that is

$$\sum_{n=1}^m (m, n)x^{m-n} = (2x+1)^{m-1} \quad m \geq n. \quad (4.2)$$

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

Hence,

$$(m, n) = \binom{m-1}{m-n} 2^{m-n} \quad m \geq n. \quad (4.3)$$

Now the rising diagonal function  $R_m(x)$  of degree  $m$  in  $x$  in Table 1 is:

$$\begin{aligned} R_m(x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor} (m+1-n, n) x^{m+1-2n} \quad (m \geq 1) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{m-n}{m+1-2n} (2x)^{m+1-2n} \quad \text{by (4.3)} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{m-n}{n-1} (2x)^{m+1-2n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m-1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{m-n-1}{n} (2x)^{m-1-2n} \\ &= P_m(x) \quad \text{from (2.15)} \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$

Now consider Table 2.

Table 2: Pell-Lucas Polynomials from Rising Diagonals

| $\begin{smallmatrix} m \\ n \end{smallmatrix}$ | 1                          | 2                           | 3                           | 4                           | 5                 | 6   | 7 ... |
|--|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|-----|-------|
| 1  | <del>2x</del>              | 2                           |                             |                             |                   |     |       |
| 2  | <del>4x<sup>2</sup></del>  | <del>6x</del>               | 2                           |                             |                   |     |       |
| 3  | <del>8x<sup>3</sup></del>  | <del>16x<sup>2</sup></del>  | <del>10x</del>              | 2                           |                   |     |       |
| 4  | <del>16x<sup>4</sup></del> | <del>40x<sup>3</sup></del>  | <del>36x<sup>2</sup></del>  | <del>14x</del>              | 2                 |     |       |
| 5  | <del>32x<sup>5</sup></del> | <del>96x<sup>4</sup></del>  | <del>112x<sup>3</sup></del> | <del>64x<sup>2</sup></del>  | 18x               | 2   |       |
| 6  | <del>64x<sup>6</sup></del> | <del>224x<sup>5</sup></del> | <del>320x<sup>4</sup></del> | <del>240x<sup>3</sup></del> | 100x <sup>2</sup> | 22x | 2     |
| ⋮  |                            |                             |                             |                             |                   |     |       |

Let  $[m, n]$  denote the coefficient of the power of  $x$  in the  $m^{\text{th}}$  row and  $n^{\text{th}}$  column.

We may define the entries in row  $m$  as the terms in the expansion of

$$(2x+1)^m + (2x+1)^{m-1} = (2x+1)^{m-1}(2x+2),$$

that is,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{m+1} [m, n] x^{m+1-n} = (2x+1)^{m-1}(2x+2) \quad (4.6)$$

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

and so

$$\begin{aligned} [m, n] &= 2(m, n) + 2(m, n-1) = 2(m, n) + (m, n-1) + (m, n-1) \\ &= (m+1, n) + (m, n-1). \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

Denote the rising diagonal function of degree  $m$  in  $x$  in Table 2 by  $S_m(x)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} S_m(x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} [m+1-n, n] x^{m+2-2n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} \{(m+2-n, n) + (m+1-n, n-1)\} x^{m+2-2n} \quad \text{by (4.7)} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} \left\{ \binom{m+1-n}{n-1} + \binom{m-n}{n-2} \right\} (2x)^{m+2-2n} \quad \text{by (4.3)} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\left[\frac{m}{2}\right]} \frac{m}{m-n} \binom{m-n}{n} (2x)^{m-2n} \quad \text{on simplification} \\ &= Q_m(x) \quad \text{by (2.16)} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have demonstrated that Pell and Pell-Lucas polynomials are generated by the rising diagonals in Table 1 and Table 2, respectively.

Next, arrange the coefficients of the powers of  $x$  in  $P_n(x)$ , (1.5), in the following Pascal-like display.

Table 3: Pell Polynomial Coefficients

| Coeffs.<br>in $P_n(x)$ | Powers | 0 | 1  | 2  | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7    | 8   | 9 ... |
|------------------------|--------|---|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-------|
|                        |        |   |    |    |     |     |     |     |      |     |       |
| 1                      |        | 1 |    |    |     |     |     |     |      |     |       |
| 2                      |        | 0 | 2  |    |     |     |     |     |      |     |       |
| 3                      |        | 1 | 0  | 4  |     |     |     |     |      |     |       |
| 4                      |        | 0 | 4  | 0  | 8   |     |     |     |      |     |       |
| 5                      |        | 1 | 0  | 12 | 0   | 16  |     |     |      |     |       |
| 6                      |        | 0 | 6  | 0  | 32  | 0   | 32  |     |      |     |       |
| 7                      |        | 1 | 0  | 24 | 0   | 80  | 0   | 64  |      |     |       |
| 8                      |        | 0 | 8  | 0  | 80  | 0   | 192 | 0   | 128  |     |       |
| 9                      |        | 1 | 0  | 40 | 0   | 240 | 0   | 448 | 0    | 256 |       |
| 10                     |        | 0 | 10 | 0  | 160 | 0   | 672 | 0   | 1024 | 0   | 512   |
| ⋮                      |        |   |    |    |     |     |     |     |      |     |       |

Designate the entry in the  $r^{\text{th}}$  row and  $c^{\text{th}}$  column of Table 3 by  $\{r, c\}$ . From the table and (2.15), we have:

$$\{2r, 2c\} = 0 \quad (4.8)$$

$$\{2r, 2c - 1\} = \begin{cases} \binom{r+c-1}{r-c} 2^{2c-1} & c = 1, 2, \dots, r \\ 0 & c > r \end{cases} \quad (4.9)$$

$$\{2r - 1, 2c - 1\} = 0 \quad (4.10)$$

$$\{2r - 1, 2c\} = \begin{cases} \binom{r+c-1}{r-c-1} 2^{2c} & c = 0, 1, 2, \dots, r - 1 \\ 0 & c \geq r \end{cases} \quad (4.11)$$

Using (4.8)-(4.11), we can prove:

$$\sum_{i=0}^{r-1} \{2r - 1 - i, i\} = 3^{r-1} \quad (4.12)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2r} \{i, 2c - 1\} = \frac{1}{2} \{2r + 1, 2c\} \quad (4.13)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2r} \{i, 2c\} = \frac{1}{2} \{2r, 2c + 1\} \quad (4.14)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2r-1} \{i, 2c - 1\} = \frac{1}{2} \{2r - 1, 2c\} \quad (4.15)$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{2r-1} \{i, 2c\} = \frac{1}{2} \{2r, 2c + 1\} \quad (4.16)$$

Proof of (4.12)

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=0}^{r-1} \{2r - 1 - i, i\} &= \{2r - 1, 0\} + \{2r - 2, 1\} + \dots + \{r, r - 1\} \\ &= \binom{r-1}{r-1} 2^0 + \binom{r-1}{r-2} 2^1 + \dots + \binom{r-1}{0} 2^{r-1} \quad \text{by (4.9) and (4.11)} \\ &= (1 + 2)^{r-1} = 3^{r-1} \end{aligned}$$

Proof of (4.13)

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^{2r} \{i, 2c - 1\} &= \{2, 2c - 1\} + \{4, 2c - 1\} + \dots + \{2r, 2c - 1\} \quad \text{by (4.10)} \\ &= \{2c, 2c - 1\} + \{2c + 2, 2c - 1\} + \dots + \{2r, 2c - 1\} \quad \text{by (4.9)} \\ &= 2^{2c-1} \left( \binom{2c-1}{0} + \binom{2c}{1} + \dots + \binom{r+c-1}{r-c} \right) \quad \text{by (4.9)} \\ &= 2^{2c-1} \left( \binom{2c-1}{2c-1} + \binom{2c}{2c-1} + \dots + \binom{r+c-1}{2c-1} \right) \\ &= 2^{2c-1} \binom{r+c}{2c} \quad \text{by identity (1.52) in [6]} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \{2r + 1, 2c\} \quad \text{by (4.11)} \end{aligned}$$

If a similar table for  $Q_n(x)$  is constructed, and if we designate the element in row  $r$  and column  $c$  by  $\overline{r, c}$ , we have from (2.1) that

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

$$\overline{r, c} = \{r+1, c\} + \{r-1, c\} = 2\{r, c-1\} + 2\{r-1, c\}. \quad (4.17)$$

Properties of  $\overline{r, c}$  may then be developed on the basis of (4.8)-(4.11).

From (2.2), we derive

$$\overline{r+1, c} + \overline{r-1, c} = 4\{r, c\} + 4\{r, c-2\}. \quad (4.18)$$

To conclude this section, we establish a relationship between  $(m, n)$  and  $\{r, c\}$  in Tables 1 and 3, respectively (both relating to the Pell polynomials). A relationship between  $[m, n]$  and  $\overline{r, c}$  will also be formulated for the Pell-Lucas polynomials.

Now in (4.9),  $2c-1$  is the power of  $x$  in  $P_{2r}(x)$ . Comparing the coefficient of the term  $x^{2c-1}$  in (2.15) with that in (4.3), where we recall that

$$\binom{m-1}{m-n} = \binom{m-1}{n-1}$$

we deduce that

$$\{2r, 2c-1\} = (r+c, r-c+1) \quad (4.19)$$

and so

$$(r, c) = \{r+c-1, r-c\}. \quad (4.20)$$

A similar argument applied to (2.15) and (4.3) for (4.1) yields

$$\{2r-1, 2c\} = (r+c, r-c)$$

whence (4.20) results again.

Lastly, consider  $\overline{2r, 2c}$ , the coefficient of  $x^{2c}$  in  $Q_{2r}(x)$ . From (4.17),

$$\overline{2r, 2c} = \left( \binom{r+c}{r-c} + \binom{r+c-1}{r-c-1} \right) 2^{2c}.$$

Using (4.7) with (4.3), we find

$$[m, n] = \left( \binom{m}{n-1} + \binom{m-1}{n-2} \right) 2^{m-n+1}$$

whence, by comparison of the two forms,

$$\overline{2r, 2c} = [r+c, r-c+1]. \quad (4.21)$$

Reversely,

$$[r, c] = \overline{r+c-1, r-c+1}. \quad (4.22)$$

A similar formula to (4.21) is

$$\overline{2r-1, 2c+1} = [r+c, r-c]$$

whence (4.22) results again.

## 5. DETERMINANTAL GENERATION OF $P_n(x)$ , $Q_n(x)$

Write  $d_{ij}$  for the element in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row and  $j^{\text{th}}$  column of an  $n \times n$  determinant.

Let  $\Delta_n(x)$  be the  $n \times n$  determinant defined by

$$\Delta_n(x) : \begin{cases} d_{ii} = 2x & i = 1, 2, \dots, n \\ d_{i, i+1} = 1 & i = 1, \dots, n-1 \\ d_{i, i-1} = -1 & i = 2, \dots, n \\ d_{ij} = 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (5.1)$$

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

From  $\Delta_n(x)$ , the determinants  $\delta_n(x)$ ,  $\Delta_n^*(x)$ , and  $\delta_n^*(x)$  are defined as follows:

$$\delta_n(x): \text{ as for } \Delta_n(x) \text{ except that } d_{i,i+1} = -1, d_{i,i-1} = 1 \quad (5.2)$$

$$\Delta_n^*(x): \text{ as for } \Delta_n(x) \text{ except that } d_{12} = 2, d_{i,i+1} = 1 \quad (5.3)$$

$$(i = 2, \dots, n-1)$$

$$\delta_n^*(x): \text{ as for } \Delta_n(x) \text{ except that } d_{12} = -2, d_{i,i+1} = -1 \quad (5.4)$$

$$(i = 2, \dots, n-1) \quad d_{i,i-1} = 1.$$

Induction and expansion along the first row, together with basic properties of  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$ , e.g., (1.1), (2.1), yield

$$\Delta_n(x) = P_{n+1}(x) \quad (5.5)$$

$$\delta_n(x) = P_{n+1}(x) \quad (5.6)$$

$$\Delta_n^*(x) = Q_n(x) \quad (5.7)$$

$$\delta_n^*(x) = Q_n(x). \quad (5.8)$$

In the process of expansion, we derive recurrence relations such as

$$\Delta_k(x) = 2x\Delta_{k-1}(x) + \Delta_{k-2}(x) \quad k \geq 3 \quad (5.9)$$

and

$$\Delta_k^*(x) = 2x\Delta_{k-1}^*(x) + 2\Delta_{k-2}^*(x) \quad k \geq 3. \quad (5.10)$$

## 6. RELATIONS OF $P_n(x)$ , $Q_n(x)$ TO OTHER FUNCTIONS

Perhaps the simplest results relating  $P_n(x)$  to other functions are found in [4]:

$$P_{2n}(x) = \sinh 2nt / \cosh t \quad \left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} P_{2n}(x) \\ P_{2n+1}(x) \end{matrix}} \right\} x = \sinh t \quad (6.1)$$

$$P_{2n+1}(x) = \cosh(2n+1)t / \cosh t \quad (6.2)$$

Hence

$$Q_{2n}(x) = 2 \cosh 2nt \quad \left. \vphantom{\begin{matrix} Q_{2n}(x) \\ Q_{2n+1}(x) \end{matrix}} \right\} x = \sinh t \quad (6.3)$$

$$Q_{2n+1}(x) = 2 \sinh(2n+1)t \quad (6.4)$$

Comparison of the explicit summation formulas for  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  given in (2.15) and (2.16) with the explicit summation formulas for  $U_n(x)$  and  $T_n(x)$ , the Chebyshev polynomials of the second and first kinds, respectively (see [11]), shows that

$$P_n(x) = (-i)^{n-1} U_{n-1}(ix) \quad (6.5)$$

and

$$Q_n(x) = 2(-i)^n T_n(ix) \quad (6.6)$$

i.e.,  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  are modified Chebyshev polynomials in a complex variable. To reconcile the form in [11] with (2.16) we had to replace the Gamma function, namely,  $\Gamma(n-m) = (n-m-1)!$

Because of (6.5) and (6.6),  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  would have [9] complex hypergeometric representations. Other representations also exist in view of the many forms the expressions for  $U_n(x)$  and  $T_n(x)$  can take.

In particular, we may record that

$$P_n(i \cosh x) = i^{n-1} \sinh nx / \sinh x \quad (6.7)$$

and

$$Q_n(i \cosh x) = 2i^n \cosh nx. \quad (6.8)$$



# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

From (1.1) we observe that

$$P_{n+1}(ix) + P_{n-1}(ix) = Q_n(ix)$$

leads, with the help of (6.5) and (6.6), to

$$U_n(ix) - U_{n-2}(ix) = 2T_n(ix), \quad (6.9)$$

which is a complex version of a basic relationship between the two kinds of Chebyshev polynomials. Similarly, other Chebyshev relationships may be tied to corresponding relationships involving  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$ .

Finally, we allude to the *Gegenbauer (ultraspherical) polynomial* of degree  $n$  and order  $\nu$ ,  $C_n^\nu(x)$ , defined by

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} C_n^\nu(x) t^n = (1 - 2xt + t^2)^{-\nu} \quad (\nu > 0, \quad |t| < 1). \quad (6.10)$$

with explicit forms

$$C_n^0(x) = \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r}{n-r} \binom{n-r}{r} (2x)^{n-2r} \quad C_0^0(x) = 1 \quad (\nu = 0) \quad (6.11)$$

and

$$C_n^\nu(x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu)} \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} (-1)^r \frac{\Gamma(n-r+\nu)}{\Gamma(n-r+1)} \binom{n-r}{r} (2x)^{n-2r} \quad (\nu > -\frac{1}{2}; \nu \neq 0). \quad (6.12)$$

A recurrence relation for  $C_n^\nu(x)$  is

$$(n+2)C_{n+2}^\nu(x) = 2(n+\nu+1)x C_{n+1}^\nu(x) - (n+2\nu)C_n^\nu(x) \quad (6.13)$$

which, for  $\nu = 1$ , reduces to

$$C_{n+2}^1(x) = 2xC_{n+1}^1(x) - C_n^1(x) \quad (6.14)$$

with

$$C_0^1(x) = 1, \quad C_1^1(x) = 2x. \quad (6.15)$$

Clearly,  $C_n^1(x) = U_n(x)$ , and by (6.5),

$$P_n(x) = (-i)^{n-1} C_{n-1}^1(ix). \quad (6.16)$$

When  $\nu = 0$ , (6.11), where  $C_1^0(x) = 2x$ , gives

$$C_n^0(x) = \frac{2}{n} T_n(x),$$

so that (6.6) gives

$$Q_n(x) = n(-i) C_n^0(ix) \quad (n \geq 1) \quad (6.17)$$

i.e.,  $P_n(x)$ ,  $Q_n(x)$  are modified Gegenbauer polynomials in a complex variable.

As the Fibonacci and Lucas numbers arise from  $P_n(x)$  and  $Q_n(x)$  when  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ , we have, from (6.16) and (6.17),

$$F_1 = C_0^1\left(\frac{i}{2}\right) = 1, \quad F_n = (-i)^{n-1} C_{n-1}^1\left(\frac{i}{2}\right) \quad (6.18)$$

and

$$L_0 = 2C_0^0\left(\frac{i}{2}\right) = 2, \quad L_n = n(-1)^n C_n^0\left(\frac{i}{2}\right) \quad n \geq 1. \quad (6.19)$$

Using the known [9] result  $dT_n(x)/dx = nU_{n-1}(x)$  from [11] with (6.5) and (6.6), we can arrive back at (2.17), viz.,  $dQ_n(x)/dx = 2nP_n(x)$ .

# PELL AND PELL-LUCAS POLYNOMIALS

Differentiating in (2.15) and applying (6.12) in the case  $v = 2$ , we deduce that

$$\frac{dP_n(x)}{dx} = 2(-i)^{n-2}C_{n-2}^2(ix). \quad (6.20)$$

Alternatively, we may differentiate in (6.16) and invoke the result [11]

$$\frac{dC_n^v(x)}{dx} = 2vC_{n-1}^{v+1}(x)$$

to obtain (6.20).

Some of the above results, e.g., (6.16), were generalized in [12] for the sequence of polynomials  $\{A_k(x)\}$  defined by

$$A_{n+2}(x) = 2xA_{n+1}(x) + A_n(x) \quad A_0(x) = s, \quad A_1(x) = r. \quad (6.21)$$

Of course,  $\{A_n(x)\}$  is a special case of the sequence  $\{W_n(p, q; a, b)\}$ , some of whose properties are documented in [8].

Information related to some aspects of the above ideas can be found in [1], [2], [3], [4], [5], [9], and [10].

## REFERENCES

1. R. Barakat. "The Matrix Operator  $e^x$  and the Lucas Polynomials." *J. Math. and Physics* 43 (1964):332-35.
2. M. Bicknell. "A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers. Part VII: Introduction to Fibonacci Polynomials and Their Divisibility Properties." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 8, no. 4 (1970):407-20.
3. R. G. Buschman. "Fibonacci Numbers, Chebyshev Polynomials, Generalizations and Difference Equations." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 4 (1963):1-7, 19.
4. P. F. Byrd. "Expansion of Analytic Functions in Polynomials Associated with Fibonacci Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 1 (1963):16-24.
5. P. F. Byrd. "Expansion of Analytic Functions in Terms involving Lucas Numbers or Similar Number Sequences." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 2 (1965):101-14.
6. H. W. Gould. *Combinatorial Identities*. Morgantown, 1972.
7. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. *Fibonacci and Lucas Numbers*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1969, rpt. Santa Clara, Calif.: The Fibonacci Association, 1980.
8. A. F. Horadam. "Basic Properties of a Certain Generalized Sequence of Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 3 (1965):161-75.
9. A. F. Horadam & S. Pethe. "Polynomials Associated with Gegenbauer Polynomials." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 5 (1981):393-98.
10. E. Lucas. *Théorie des Nombres*. Paris: Blanchard, 1961.
11. W. Magnus, F. Oberhettinger, & R. P. Soni. *Formulas and Theorems for the Special Functions of Mathematical Physics*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1966.
12. J. E. Walton. M.Sc. Thesis, University of New England, 1968.

◆◆◆◆

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

KRASSIMIR T. ATANASSOV  
LILIYA C. ATANASSOVA

*CLANP—Bulgarian Academy of Sciences, 1184 Sofia, Bulgaria*

DIMITAR D. SASSELOV

*Cl. Ochridski University, 1126 Sofia, Bulgaria*

(Submitted April 1983)

## I

Let the arbitrary real numbers  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  be given. Construct two sequences  $\{\alpha_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  for which

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_0 = a, & \alpha_1 = c, & \beta_0 = b, & \beta_1 = d \\ \alpha_{n+2} = \beta_{n+1} + \beta_n, & n \geq 0 \\ \beta_{n+2} = \alpha_{n+1} + \alpha_n, & n \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad (1)$$

Clearly, if we set  $a = b$  and  $c = d$ , then the sequences  $\{\alpha_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  will coincide with each other and with the sequence  $\{F_i(a, d)\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ . The first ten terms of the sequences defined in (1) are:

| $n$ | $\alpha_n$              | $\beta_n$               |
|-----|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0   | $a$                     | $b$                     |
| 1   | $c$                     | $d$                     |
| 2   | $b + d$                 | $a + c$                 |
| 3   | $a + c + d$             | $b + c + d$             |
| 4   | $a + b + 2c + d$        | $a + b + c + 2d$        |
| 5   | $a + 2b + 2c + 3d$      | $2a + b + 3c + 2d$      |
| 6   | $3a + 2b + 4c + 4d$     | $2a + 3b + 4c + 4d$     |
| 7   | $4a + 4b + 7c + 6d$     | $4a + 4b + 6c + 7d$     |
| 8   | $6a + 7b + 10c + 11d$   | $7a + 6b + 11c + 10d$   |
| 9   | $11a + 10b + 17c + 17d$ | $10a + 11b + 17c + 17d$ |

A careful examination of the corresponding terms in each column leads one immediately to

### Theorem 1.1

- (a)  $\alpha_{3n} + \beta_0 = \beta_{3n} + \alpha_0, \quad n \geq 0$
- (b)  $\alpha_{3n+1} + \beta_1 = \beta_{3n+1} + \alpha_1, \quad n \geq 0$
- (c)  $\alpha_{3n+2} + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 = \beta_{3n+2} + \beta_0 + \beta_1, \quad n \geq 0$

Proof of (a): The statement is obviously true if  $n = 0$ . Assume the statement is true for some integer  $n \geq 1$ . Then

$$\alpha_{3n+3} + \beta_0 = \beta_{3n+2} + \beta_{3n+1} + \beta_0 \quad \text{by (1)}$$

(continued)

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \alpha_{3n+1} + \alpha_{3n} + \beta_{3n+1} + \beta_0 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \alpha_{3n+1} + \beta_{3n} + \beta_{3n+1} + \alpha_0 && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\
 &= \alpha_{3n+1} + \alpha_{3n+2} + \alpha_0 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \beta_{3n+3} + \alpha_0 && \text{by (1).}
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the statement is true for all integers  $n \geq 0$ . Similar proofs can be given for parts (b) and (c).

Adding the first  $n$  terms of each sequence  $\{\alpha_i\}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}$  yields a result similar to that obtained by adding the first  $n$  Fibonacci numbers. That is,

Theorem 1.2. For all integers  $k \geq 0$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(a)} \quad \alpha_{3k+2} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k} \beta_i + \beta_1 & \text{(d)} \quad \beta_{3k+2} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k} \alpha_i + \alpha_1 \\
 \text{(b)} \quad \alpha_{3k+3} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+1} \alpha_i + \beta_1 & \text{(e)} \quad \beta_{3k+3} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+1} \beta_i + \alpha_1 \\
 \text{(c)} \quad \alpha_{3k+4} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} \beta_i + \alpha_1 & \text{(f)} \quad \beta_{3k+4} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} \alpha_i + \beta_1
 \end{aligned}$$

Because the proofs of each part are very similar, we give only a proof of part (e).

Proof of (e): If  $k = 0$  the statement is obviously true, since

$$\sum_{i=0}^1 \beta_i + \alpha_1 = \beta_0 + \beta_1 + \alpha_1 = \alpha_2 + \alpha_1 = \beta_3.$$

Assume (e) is true for some integer  $k \geq 1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \beta_{3k+6} &= \alpha_{3k+5} + \alpha_{3k+4} && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \beta_{3k+4} + \beta_{3k+3} + \alpha_{3k+4} && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \beta_{3k+4} + \sum_{i=0}^{3k+1} \beta_i + \alpha_1 + \beta_{3k+3} + \beta_{3k+2} && \text{by induction hypothesis and (1)} \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+4} \beta_i + \alpha_1.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, (e) is true for all integers  $k \geq 0$ .

Adding the first  $n$  terms with even or odd subscripts for each sequence  $\{\alpha_i\}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}$ , we obtain more results which are similar to those obtained when one adds the first  $n$  terms of the Fibonacci sequence with even or odd subscripts. That is,

Theorem 1.3. For all integers  $k \geq 0$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(a)} \quad \alpha_{6k+5} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} \beta_{2i} - \alpha_0 + \beta_1 & \text{(c)} \quad \alpha_{6k+7} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+3} \beta_{2i} - \beta_0 + \alpha_1 \\
 \text{(b)} \quad \alpha_{6k+6} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+3} \beta_{2i-1} + \alpha_0 & \text{(d)} \quad \alpha_{6k+8} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+4} \beta_{2i-1} + \beta_0
 \end{aligned}$$

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

$$\begin{aligned}
 (e) \quad \alpha_{6k+9} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+4} \beta_{2i} - \beta_0 + \beta_1 \\
 (f) \quad \alpha_{6k+10} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+5} \beta_{2i-1} + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 - \beta_1 \\
 (g) \quad \beta_{6k+5} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} \alpha_{2i} - \beta_0 + \alpha_1 \\
 (h) \quad \beta_{6k+6} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+3} \alpha_{2i-1} + \beta_0 \\
 (i) \quad \beta_{6k+7} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+3} \alpha_{2i} - \alpha_0 + \beta_1 \\
 (j) \quad \beta_{6k+8} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+4} \alpha_{2i-1} + \alpha_0 \\
 (k) \quad \beta_{6k+9} &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+4} \alpha_{2i} - \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 \\
 (l) \quad \beta_{6k+10} &= \sum_{i=1}^{3k+5} \alpha_{2i-1} + \beta_0 - \alpha_1 + \beta_1
 \end{aligned}$$

Proof of (g): If  $k = 0$  the statement is obviously true, since

$$\sum_{i=0}^2 \alpha_{2i} - \beta_0 + \alpha_1 = \alpha_0 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_4 - \beta_0 + \alpha_1 = 2a + b + 3c + 2d = \beta_5.$$

Assume (g) is true for some integer  $k \geq 1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \beta_{6k+11} &= \alpha_{6k+10} + \alpha_{6k+9} && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \alpha_{6k+10} + \beta_{6k+9} + \alpha_0 - \beta_0 && \text{by Theorem 1.1, part (a)} \\
 &= \alpha_{6k+10} + \alpha_{6k+8} + \alpha_{6k+7} + \alpha_0 - \beta_0 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \alpha_{6k+10} + \alpha_{6k+8} + \beta_{6k+6} + \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} \alpha_{2i} + \alpha_1 + \alpha_0 - 2\beta_0 \\
 &&& \text{by (1) and induction hypothesis} \\
 &= \alpha_{6k+10} + \alpha_{6k+8} + \sum_{i=0}^{3k+3} \alpha_{2i} + \alpha_1 - \beta_0 && \text{by Theorem 1.1, part (a)} \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{3k+5} \alpha_{2i} + \alpha_1 - \beta_0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, (g) is true for all integers  $k \geq 0$ . A similar proof can be given for each of the remaining eleven parts of the theorem.

The following result is an interesting relationship which follows immediately from Theorems 1.1 and 1.2. Therefore, the proofs are omitted.

Theorem 1.4. If  $k \geq 0$ , then

$$(a) \quad \sum_{i=0}^{3k} (\alpha_i - \beta_i) = \alpha_0 - \beta_0$$

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

$$(b) \sum_{i=0}^{3k+1} (\alpha_i - \beta_i) = \beta_2 - \alpha_2$$

$$(c) \sum_{i=0}^{3k+2} (\alpha_i - \beta_i) = 0.$$

As one might suspect, there should be a relationship between the new sequence and the Fibonacci numbers. The next theorem establishes one of these relationships.

**Theorem 1.5.** If  $n \geq 0$ , then

$$\alpha_{n+2} + \beta_{n+2} = F_{n+1}(\alpha_0 + \beta_0) + F_{n+2}(\alpha_1 + \beta_1).$$

**Proof:** The statement is obviously true if  $n = 0$  and  $n = 1$ . Assume that the statement is true for all integers less than or equal to some  $n \geq 2$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{n+3} + \beta_{n+3} &= \beta_{n+2} + \beta_{n+1} + \alpha_{n+2} + \alpha_{n+1} && \text{by (1)} \\ &= F_{n+1}(\alpha_0 + \beta_0) + F_{n+2}(\alpha_1 + \beta_1) + F_n(\alpha_0 + \beta_0) \\ &\quad + F_{n+1}(\alpha_1 + \beta_1) && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\ &= F_{n+2}(\alpha_0 + \beta_0) + F_{n+3}(\alpha_1 + \beta_1). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the statement is true for all integers  $n \geq 0$ .

At this point, one could continue to establish properties for the two sequences  $\{\alpha_i\}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}$  which are similar to those of the Fibonacci sequence. However, we have chosen another route.

## II

Express the members of the sequences  $\{\alpha_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , when  $n \geq 0$ , as follows:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \alpha_n &= \Gamma_n^1 a + \Gamma_n^2 b + \Gamma_n^3 c + \Gamma_n^4 d \\ \beta_n &= \delta_n^1 a + \delta_n^2 b + \delta_n^3 c + \delta_n^4 d \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2)$$

In this way we obtain the eight sequences  $\{\Gamma_i^j\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ ,  $\{\delta_i^j\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , ( $j = 1, 2, 3, 4$ ). The purpose of this section is to show how these eight sequences are related to each other and to the Fibonacci numbers with the major intent of finding a direct formula for calculating  $\alpha_n$  and  $\beta_n$  for any  $n$ .

Theorem 2.1 establishes a relationship between these eight sequences and the Fibonacci numbers.

**Theorem 2.1**

$$\begin{aligned} (a) \quad \Gamma_n^1 + \delta_n^1 &= F_{n-1}, \quad n \geq 0 & (c) \quad \Gamma_n^3 + \delta_n^3 &= F_n, \quad n \geq 0 \\ (b) \quad \Gamma_n^2 + \delta_n^2 &= F_{n-1}, \quad n \geq 0 & (d) \quad \Gamma_n^4 + \delta_n^4 &= F_n, \quad n \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Proof of (a):** This is obviously true if  $n = 0$  and 1, since

$$\Gamma_0^1 + \delta_0^1 = 1 + 0 = F_{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma_1^1 + \delta_1^1 = 0 + 0 = 0 = F_0.$$

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

Assume this is true for all integers less than or equal to some integer  $n \geq 2$ . Then

$$\Gamma_{n+1}^1 + \delta_{n+1}^1 = \delta_n^1 + \delta_{n-1}^1 + \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} = F_n,$$

and (a) is true for all integers  $n \geq 0$ . Similarly, one can prove parts (b), (c), and (d).

The next step is to show how the above eight sequences are related to each other.

**Theorem 2.2.** If  $k \geq 0$ , then

$$(a) \quad \Gamma_{3k}^1 = \delta_{3k}^1 + 1$$

$$(g) \quad \Gamma_{3k}^3 = \delta_{3k}^3$$

$$(b) \quad \Gamma_{3k+1}^1 = \delta_{3k+1}^1$$

$$(h) \quad \Gamma_{3k+1}^3 = \delta_{3k+1}^3 + 1$$

$$(c) \quad \Gamma_{3k+2}^1 = \delta_{3k+2}^1 - 1$$

$$(i) \quad \Gamma_{3k+2}^3 = \delta_{3k+2}^3 - 1$$

$$(d) \quad \Gamma_{3k}^2 = \delta_{3k}^2 - 1$$

$$(j) \quad \Gamma_{3k}^4 = \delta_{3k}^4$$

$$(e) \quad \Gamma_{3k+1}^2 = \delta_{3k+1}^2$$

$$(k) \quad \Gamma_{3k+1}^4 = \delta_{3k+1}^4 - 1$$

$$(f) \quad \Gamma_{3k+2}^2 = \delta_{3k+2}^2 + 1$$

$$(l) \quad \Gamma_{3k+2}^4 = \delta_{3k+2}^4 + 1$$

Proof of (j): It is obvious that (j) is true if  $k = 0$ , since  $\Gamma_0^4 = \delta_0^4 = 0$ . Assume the statement is true for some integer  $k \geq 1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{3k+3}^4 &= \delta_{3k+2}^4 + \delta_{3k+1}^4 && \text{by (1)} \\ &= \Gamma_{3k+1}^4 + \Gamma_{3k}^4 + \delta_{3k+1}^4 && \text{by (1)} \\ &= \Gamma_{3k+1}^4 + \delta_{3k}^4 + \delta_{3k+1}^4 && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\ &= \Gamma_{3k+1}^4 + \Gamma_{3k+2}^4 = \delta_{3k+3}^4 && \text{by (1)} \end{aligned}$$

and the statement is proved. The remaining parts are proved in a similar way.

We now show

**Theorem 2.3.** If  $n \geq 0$ , then

$$(a) \quad \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_n^2 = \delta_n^1 + \delta_n^2$$

$$(b) \quad \Gamma_n^3 + \Gamma_n^4 = \delta_n^3 + \delta_n^4$$

Proof of (a): This is obviously true if  $n = 0$  and  $n = 1$ . Assume true for all integers less than or equal to some integer  $n \geq 2$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{n+1}^1 + \Gamma_{n+1}^2 &= \delta_n^1 + \delta_{n-1}^1 + \delta_n^2 + \delta_{n-1}^2 && \text{by (1)} \\ &= \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_n^2 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^2 && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\ &= \delta_{n+1}^1 + \delta_{n+1}^2 && \text{by (1)} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, one can prove part (b).

Before stating and proving our main result for this section, we need the following three theorems.

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

**Theorem 2.4.** If  $n \geq 0$ , then

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) $\delta_n^1 = \Gamma_n^2$ | (e) $\Gamma_n^3 = \Gamma_{n+1}^2$ |
| (b) $\delta_n^2 = \Gamma_n^1$ | (f) $\Gamma_n^4 = \Gamma_{n+1}^1$ |
| (c) $\delta_n^3 = \Gamma_n^4$ | (g) $\delta_n^3 = \delta_{n+1}^2$ |
| (d) $\delta_n^4 = \Gamma_n^3$ | (h) $\delta_n^4 = \delta_{n+1}^1$ |

Proof of (a): The statement is trivially true for  $n = 0, 1, 2$ , so assume it is true for all integers less than or equal to  $n$  where  $n \geq 3$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \delta_{n+1}^1 &= \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \delta_{n-1}^1 + \delta_{n-2}^1 + \delta_{n-2}^1 + \delta_{n-3}^1 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \Gamma_{n-1}^2 + \Gamma_{n-2}^2 + \Gamma_{n-2}^2 + \Gamma_{n-3}^2 && \text{by induction hypothesis}
 \end{aligned}$$

Two applications of (1) will complete the proof of part (a) of the theorem. The other parts are proved by similar arguments.

From Theorems 2.1 and 2.4, we have the following.

**Theorem 2.5**

- (a)  $\Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_n^2 = \delta_n^1 + \delta_n^2 = F_{n-1} \quad (n \geq 0)$   
 (b)  $\Gamma_n^3 + \Gamma_n^4 = \delta_n^3 + \delta_n^4 = F_n \quad (n \geq 0)$

Finally, we have the following statement.

**Theorem 2.6.** If  $n \geq 2$ , then

- (a)  $\Gamma_n^1 = \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + \Gamma_{n-2}^1 + 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - n + 1$   
 (b)  $\Gamma_n^2 = \Gamma_{n-1}^2 + \Gamma_{n-2}^2 + n - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - 1$   
 (c)  $\Gamma_n^3 = \Gamma_n^2 + 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - n + 1$   
 (d)  $\Gamma_n^3 = \Gamma_{n-1}^3 + \Gamma_{n-2}^3 + n - 3\left[\frac{n+1}{3}\right]$   
 (e)  $\Gamma_n^4 = \Gamma_{n-1}^4 + \Gamma_{n-2}^4 + 3\left[\frac{n+1}{3}\right] - n$   
 (f)  $\Gamma_n^3 = \Gamma_n^4 + n - 3\left[\frac{n+1}{3}\right]$

Proof of (a): The statement is obviously true if  $n$  equals 2 or 3. Assume the statement true for all integers less than or equal to  $n \geq 4$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Gamma_{n+1}^1 &= \delta_n^1 + \delta_{n-1}^1 = \Gamma_n^2 + \Gamma_{n-1}^2 && \text{by (1) and Theorem 2.4, part (a)} \\
 &= \delta_{n-1}^2 + \delta_{n-2}^2 + \delta_{n-2}^2 + \delta_{n-3}^2 && \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + \Gamma_{n-2}^1 + \Gamma_{n-2}^1 + \Gamma_{n-3}^1 && \text{by Theorem 2.4, part (b)}
 \end{aligned}$$

(continued)



# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \Gamma_n^1 - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] + n - 1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 - 3\left[\frac{n-1}{3}\right] + n - 2 \quad \text{by induction hypothesis} \\
 &= \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + 2n - 3 - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - 3\left[\frac{n-1}{3}\right] \\
 &= \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + 2n - 3 + 3\left[\frac{n+1}{3}\right] - 3n + 3 \\
 &= \Gamma_n^1 + \Gamma_{n-1}^1 + 3\left[\frac{n+1}{3}\right] - (n-1) + 1
 \end{aligned}$$

and part (a) is proved. (It can be shown that  $[(n+1)/3] + [n/3] + [(n-1)/3] = n-1$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .) Similarly, one can prove parts (b), (d), and (e).

The proof of part (c) above follows directly from part (a) of Theorem 2.6, (1), and part (a) of Theorem 2.4. The proof of part (f) follows by a similar argument.

Adding the equations of part (a) of both Theorems 2.5 and 2.6, we have, for  $n \geq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Gamma_{n+2}^1 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+1} - \Gamma_{n+2}^2 + \Gamma_{n+1}^1 + \Gamma_n^1 + 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+1} - \Gamma_{n+2}^2 + \delta_{n+2}^1 + 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) \quad \text{by (1)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+1} + 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) \quad \text{by (a) of Theorem 2.4} \\
 &= \delta_{n+2}^2 \quad \text{by (a) of Theorem 2.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Gamma_{n+2}^2 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+1} - 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] + n + 1 \right) = \delta_{n+2}^1 \\
 \Gamma_{n+2}^3 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+2} - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] + n - 1 \right) = \delta_{n+2}^4 \\
 \Gamma_{n+2}^4 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( F_{n+2} + 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - n + 1 \right) = \delta_{n+2}^3.
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting these four equations into (2), we have our

**BASIC THEOREM.** If  $n \geq 0$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \alpha_{n+2} &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left( F_{n+1} + 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) a + \left( F_{n+1} + n + 1 - 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] \right) b \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \left( F_{n+2} + n - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - 1 \right) c + \left( F_{n+2} + 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] + 1 - n \right) d \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ (a+b)F_{n+1} + (c+d)F_{n+2} + \left( 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) (a-b) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \left( n - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - 2 \right) (c-d) \right\}; \\
 \beta_{n+2} &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left( F_{n+1} + n + 1 - 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] \right) a + \left( F_{n+1} + 3\left[\frac{n+2}{3}\right] - n - 1 \right) b \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \left( F_{n+2} + 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] + 1 - n \right) c + \left( F_{n+2} + n - 3\left[\frac{n}{3}\right] - 1 \right) d \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

(continued)

# A NEW PERSPECTIVE TO THE GENERALIZATION OF THE FIBONACCI SEQUENCE

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ (a+b)F_{n+1} + (c+d)F_{n+2} + \left( 3 \left[ \frac{n+2}{3} \right] - n - 1 \right) (b-a) \right. \\ \left. + \left( n - 3 \left[ \frac{n}{3} \right] - 1 \right) (d-c) \right\}.$$

## III

The sequences  $\{\alpha_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{\beta_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  can also be expressed as follows [similarly to (1)]:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_0 = a, & \alpha_1 = c, & \beta_0 = b, & \beta_1 = d \\ \alpha_{n+2} = \alpha_{n+1} + \alpha_n \\ \beta_{n+2} = \beta_{n+1} + \beta_n \end{cases} \quad (n \geq 0) \quad (3)$$

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_0 = a, & \alpha_1 = c, & \beta_0 = b, & \beta_1 = d \\ \alpha_{n+2} = \beta_{n+1} + \alpha_n \\ \beta_{n+2} = \alpha_{n+1} + \beta_n \end{cases} \quad (n \geq 0) \quad (4)$$

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_0 = a, & \alpha_1 = c, & \beta_0 = b, & \beta_1 = d \\ \alpha_{n+2} = \alpha_{n+1} + \beta_n \\ \beta_{n+2} = \beta_{n+1} + \alpha_n \end{cases} \quad (n \geq 0) \quad (5)$$

The sequences (3) are actually two independent Fibonacci sequences of the form  $\{F_i(a, c)\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{F_i(b, d)\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ . It is easily seen that the sequences (4) can be expressed through the sequences  $\{F_i(a, d)\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\{F_i(b, c)\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , namely,  $\alpha_{2n} = F_{2n}(a, d)$ ,  $\alpha_{2n+1} = F_{2n+1}(b, c)$ ,  $\beta_{2n} = F_{2n}(b, c)$ ,  $\beta_{2n+1} = F_{2n+1}(a, d)$ ,  $n \geq 1$ .

In the case of (5), two sequences are introduced whose members are related similarly to those discussed in I and II. Therefore, we shall discuss them no further here.

Numerous similar pairs of sequences can be constructed. However, the ones introduced here stand most closely to the very spirit of the Fibonacci sequence and its generalization rules.

We are deeply thankful to the referee for his thorough discussion.

## REFERENCES

1. A. F. Horadam. "Basic Properties of Certain Generalized Sequences of Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 2 (1965):161-77.
2. A. F. Horadam. "Special Properties of the Sequence  $W_n(a, b; p, q)$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 5, no. 5 (1967):424-35.
3. Marjorie Bicknell-Johnson & Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. *A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers*. Santa Clara, Calif.: The Fibonacci Association, 1972.

◆◆◆◆

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES AND DECIMAL EXPANSIONS OF SOME FRACTIONS

GÜNTER KÖHLER

*Universität Würzburg, D 8700 Würzburg, West Germany  
(Submitted April 1983)*

1. In this note I respond to two earlier notes [1] and [2] on the decimal expansion of some fractions that are related to the Fibonacci numbers  $F_n$  and the Lucas numbers  $L_n$ . The simplest example is

$$\frac{1}{89} = \underset{13}{.0112358} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_{n-1} 10^{-n}.$$

21  
...

I propose to put these expansions into a context from which more examples can be drawn in abundance. The recently studied Tribonacci numbers (see [3], [4]) will also fit into this context.

The Fibonacci and Lucas numbers can be defined by the recursions

$$F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1, L_0 = 2, L_1 = 1, F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1}, L_{n+1} = L_n + L_{n-1},$$

for  $n \geq 1$ , or equivalently, by the formulas

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\omega^n - \tilde{\omega}^n), \quad L_n = \omega^n + \tilde{\omega}^n, \quad (1)$$

where  $\omega = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \sqrt{5})$ ,  $\tilde{\omega} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \sqrt{5})$ . Taking this as a definition of  $F_n$  and  $L_n$  for arbitrary integers  $n$ , it follows from

$$\omega\tilde{\omega} = -1 \quad (2)$$

that  $F_{-n} = (-1)^{n+1}F_n$ ,  $L_{-n} = (-1)^n L_n$ .

First, I shall restate and prove Theorem 2 of [2] in the following form:

Theorem 1. Let  $A, B, a_0, a_1$  be arbitrary complex numbers. Define the sequence  $(a_n)_n$  by the recursion  $a_{n+1} = Aa_n + Ba_{n-1}$ . Then the formula

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_{n-1}}{z^n} = \frac{a_0 z + (a_1 - Aa_0)}{z^2 - Az - B} \quad (3)$$

holds for all complex  $z$  such that  $|z|$  is larger than the absolute values of the zeros of  $z^2 - Az - B$ .

Corollary 2. Let a rational function

$$f(z) = \frac{a_0 z + b_1}{z^2 - Az - B}$$

with arbitrary complex numbers  $A, B, a_0, b_1$  be given. Then formula (3) holds

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

for sufficiently large  $|z|$ , where the coefficients  $a_n$  are uniquely determined by the recursion  $a_1 = b_1 + Aa_0$ ,  $a_{n+1} = Aa_n + Ba_{n-1}$ .

Proof: From the recursion, it is clear that  $a_n = O(c^n)$  for some  $c > 0$ . Therefore, the power series converges for  $|z| > c$ . Let

$$S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^{-n}.$$

Then it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (Az + B)S &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{Aa_{n-1}}{z^{n-1}} + \frac{Ba_{n-1}}{z^n} \right) = Aa_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{Aa_n + Ba_{n-1}}{z^n} \\ &= Aa_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_{n+1}}{z^n} = Aa_0 + z^2 S - a_0 z - a_1. \end{aligned}$$

This implies (3). As a power series expansion, (3) is valid in the largest annulus  $|z| > r$  which does not contain a pole of the function represented. This proves the theorem, and the corollary follows immediately.

2. As an application, I shall prove a result which shows that all decimal expansions in [1] can be regarded as special instances of Theorem 1 and, therefore, of Theorem 2 in [2]. Moreover, I believe that this result clarifies the question of convergence in [1].

Theorem 3. Let  $k$  and  $\ell$  be integers,  $k \geq 1$ . Then the formula

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{F_{k(n-1)+\ell}}{z^n} = \frac{F_{\ell} z + (-1)^{\ell} F_{k-\ell}}{z^2 - L_k z + (-1)^k} \quad (4)$$

holds for all complex  $z$  that satisfy  $|z| > \omega^k$ .

Proof: This is a direct consequence of (1), (2), (3), and the geometric sum formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{F_{k(n-1)+\ell}}{z^n} &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\omega^{kn+\ell} - \tilde{\omega}^{kn+\ell}}{z^{n+1}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left( \frac{\omega^{\ell}}{z - \omega^k} - \frac{\tilde{\omega}^{\ell}}{z - \tilde{\omega}^k} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left( \frac{(\omega^{\ell} - \tilde{\omega}^{\ell})z + (\omega^k \tilde{\omega}^{\ell} - \omega^{\ell} \tilde{\omega}^k)}{z^2 - (\omega^k + \tilde{\omega}^k)z + (\omega \tilde{\omega})^k} \right) \\ &= \frac{F_{\ell} z + (-1)^{\ell} F_{k-\ell}}{z^2 - L_k z + (-1)^k}. \end{aligned}$$

Corollary 2 now implies the recursion

$$a_{n+1} = L_k a_n + (-1)^{k+1} a_{n-1} \quad \text{for } a_n = F_{kn+\ell}. \quad (5)$$

One can also prove (5) directly and then obtain Theorem 3 as a consequence of Theorem 1.

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

3. Examples: For  $\ell = 0$ , formula (5) reads

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{F_{k(n-1)}}{z^n} = \frac{F_k}{z^2 - L_k z + (-1)^k} \quad \text{for } |z| > \omega^k. \quad (6)$$

This looks simpler than (5.1) and (5.2) in [1], and because of

$$\begin{aligned} L_1 + (L_2 + L_4 + L_6 + \cdots + L_{2m}) &= L_{2m+1}, \\ \text{and} \\ L_2 + (L_3 + L_5 + \cdots + L_{2m-1}) &= L_{2m}, \end{aligned}$$

it is in fact equivalent with those formulas. All decimal expansions in [1] are special instances of (6) when  $z$  is a power of 10. I shall now write some instances of (4) with  $\ell > 0$ .

(a) Choose  $z = 10^2$ ,  $\ell = 1$ ,  $k = 2, 3$ . This yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{99}{9701} &= \frac{10^2 F_1 - F_1}{10^4 - 10^2 L_2 + 1} = .010205133489\dots, \\ \frac{99}{9599} &= \frac{10^2 F_1 - F_2}{10^4 - 10^2 L_3 - 1} = \frac{.01031355}{\frac{233}{987}} \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

For  $z = 10^2$ , the condition  $|z| > \omega^k$  is satisfied for  $k \leq 9$ , and therefore with  $\ell = 1$  there are similar expansions of the fractions  $98/9301$ ,  $97/8899$ ,  $95/8201$ ,  $92/7099$ ,  $87/5301$ , and  $79/2399$ .

(b) Choose  $z = 10^3$ ,  $k = 5$ , and let  $\ell$  run from 1 to 4. With

$$N = 10^6 - 10^3 L_5 - 1 = 988999,$$

this yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{997}{988999} &= (10^3 F_1 - F_4)/N = .001008089987\dots, \\ \frac{1002}{988999} &= (10^3 F_2 + F_3)/N = \frac{.001013144}{1597} \\ &\dots, \\ \frac{1999}{988999} &= (10^3 F_3 - F_2)/N = \frac{.002021233}{2584} \\ &\dots, \\ \frac{3001}{988999} &= (10^3 F_4 + F_1)/N = \frac{.003034377}{4181} \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

For  $z = 10^3$ , the series (4) converges if  $k \leq 14$ . Generally, if  $z$  is fixed and  $|z|$  is large, the range of values of  $k$  for which Theorem 3 applies is easily read from a table of Lucas numbers because, by (1) and  $|\tilde{\omega}| < 2/3$ ,  $L_n$  is a good approximation for  $\omega^n$ .

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

Remark: The reasoning in the proof of Theorem 3 can also be applied to the Lucas numbers. The result is

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{L_{k(n-1)+\ell}}{z^n} = \frac{L_{\ell} z - (-1)^{\ell} L_{k-\ell}}{z^2 - L_k z + (-1)^k} \quad \text{for } |z| > \omega^k, \quad (7)$$

$$a_{n+1} = L_k a_n + (-1)^{k+1} a_{n-1} \quad \text{for } a_n = L_{kn+\ell}. \quad (8)$$

4. Theorem 1 and its proof can easily be generalized for sequences with a more complicated recursion, and any rational function can be dealt with in this way.

Theorem 4. Let arbitrary complex numbers  $A_0, A_1, \dots, A_m, a_0, a_1, \dots, a_m$  be given. Define the sequence  $(a_n)_n$  by the recursion

$$a_{n+1} = A_0 a_n + A_1 a_{n-1} + \dots + A_m a_{n-m}. \quad (9)$$

Then for all complex  $z$  such that  $|z|$  is larger than the absolute values of all zeros of

$$q(z) = z^{m+1} - A_0 z^m - A_1 z^{m-1} - \dots - A_m, \quad (10)$$

the formula

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_{n-1}}{z^n} = \frac{p(z)}{q(z)} \quad (11)$$

holds with

$$p(z) = a_0 z^m + b_1 z^{m-1} + \dots + b_m, \quad (12)$$

$$b_k = a_k - \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} A_j a_{k-1-j} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq k \leq m.$$

Corollary 5. Let any rational function  $f(z) = p(z)/q(z)$  be given such that the degree of the polynomial  $p$  is less than that of  $q$ . Then there are complex numbers  $A_0, A_1, \dots, A_m, a_0, a_1, \dots, a_m$  such that, for  $|z|$  sufficiently large, formula (11) holds with the sequence  $(a_n)_n$  defined by the recursion (9).

Proof: From (9) it follows that  $a_n = O(c^n)$  for some  $c > 0$ . Therefore, the power series in (11) converges for  $|z| > c$ . With

$$S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^{-n},$$

it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (A_0 z^m + A_1 z^{m-1} + \dots + A_m) S &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_0 z^m + A_1 z^{m-1} + \dots + A_m) a_{n-1} z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (A_0 a_{n+m-1} + A_1 a_{n+m-2} + \dots + A_m a_{n-1}) z^{-n} + A_0 (a_0 z^{m-1} + a_1 z^{m-2} + \dots + a_{m-1}) \\ &\quad + A_1 (a_0 z^{m-2} + a_1 z^{m-3} + \dots + a_{m-2}) + \dots + A_{m-1} a_0 \end{aligned}$$

(continued)

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_{m+n} z^{-n} + A_0 \alpha_0 z^{m-1} + (A_0 \alpha_1 + A_1 \alpha_0) z^{m-2} + \dots$$

$$= z^{m+1} S - \alpha_0 z^m - b_1 z^{m-1} - b_2 z^{m-2} - \dots - b_m,$$

where the  $b_k$  are defined as in (12). This implies (11). As a power series expansion, (11) is valid in the largest annulus  $|z| > r$  which does not contain a pole of the function  $p/q$ . This proves the theorem. The corollary follows at once, because the constants  $A_0, A_1, \dots, A_m, \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  can be read from (10) and (12).

The coefficients  $\alpha_n$  are uniquely determined by the function  $p/q$ . The recursion (9), however, is not unique unless one requires  $m$  to be minimal.

5. One must ask for good examples to illustrate Theorem 4 and its corollary. In view of (1), one may think of units in cubic number fields. An example of this kind is provided by the so-called Tribonacci numbers  $T_n$  (see [3], [4]). I will discuss these numbers briefly in section 6.

As a first example, I choose

$$q(z) = z^3 - z - 1$$

for the denominator in (11). This means that I consider sequences  $(\alpha_n)_n$  that satisfy the recursion

$$\alpha_n = \alpha_{n-2} + \alpha_{n-3}. \quad (13)$$

There are a real zero  $\omega_1 = 1.32471\dots$  and a pair of conjugate complex zeros  $\omega_2, \omega_3 = \overline{\omega_2}$  of the polynomial  $q$ . Define

$$\lambda_n = \omega_1^n + \omega_2^n + \omega_3^n \text{ for } n \text{ any integer.} \quad (14)$$

Since  $\lambda_n$  is symmetric in the roots of  $q$  that are algebraic units, it is plain that all  $\lambda_n$  must be rational integers. This can also be shown as follows. The roots of  $q$  satisfy

$$\omega_1 + \omega_2 + \omega_3 = 0, \quad \omega_1 \omega_2 + \omega_2 \omega_3 + \omega_3 \omega_1 = -1, \quad \omega_1 \omega_2 \omega_3 = 1. \quad (15)$$

This implies

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_2 &= \omega_1^2 + \omega_2^2 + (\omega_1 + \omega_2)^2 = 2(\omega_1^2 + \omega_2^2) + 2\omega_1 \omega_2 \\ &= 2(\lambda_2 - \omega_3^2) + \frac{2}{\omega_3} = 2\lambda_2 - 2\omega_3^2 + 2(\omega_3^2 - 1) = 2\lambda_2 - 2, \end{aligned}$$

whence  $\lambda_2 = 2$ , and from  $\omega_3^3 = \omega_3 + 1$  it follows that  $\lambda_n = \lambda_{n-2} + \lambda_{n-3}$  for all  $n$ . Thus, the  $\lambda_n$  satisfy recursion (13), the starting values being  $\lambda_0 = 3, \lambda_1 = 0, \lambda_2 = 2$ . The  $\lambda_n$  may be regarded as an analogue to the Lucas numbers. A short table of these numbers is shown below.

| $n$         | -4 | -3 | -2 | -1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 |
|-------------|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|
| $\lambda_n$ | -3 | 2  | 1  | -1 | 3 | 0 | 2 | 3 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 22 |

Note that  $\omega_1 \omega_2 \omega_3 = 1$  implies

$$\lambda_{-n} = (\omega_2 \omega_3)^n + (\omega_3 \omega_1)^n + (\omega_1 \omega_2)^n.$$

The table indicates that  $\lambda_{n+5} - \lambda_{n+4} = \lambda_n$ ; this is easily shown for any sequence  $(\alpha_n)_n$  that satisfies (13). Another consequence from (15) is  $|\omega_2|^2 = 1/\omega_1 < 1$ . Therefore, the power series  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_{n-1} z^{-n}$  converges for  $|z| > \omega_1$ , and the following analogue to Theorem 3 has a wider range of validity than Theorem 3:

# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

**Theorem 6.** Let  $\lambda_n$  be defined as in (14), and let  $k$  and  $\ell$  be integers,  $k \geq 1$ . Then the formula

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{kn+\ell}}{z^{n+1}} = \frac{\lambda_{\ell} z^2 + (\lambda_{k+\ell} - \lambda_k \lambda_{\ell}) z + \lambda_{\ell-k}}{z^3 - \lambda_k z^2 + \lambda_{-k} z - 1} \quad (16)$$

holds for all complex  $z$  that satisfy  $|z| > \omega_1^k$ . The numbers  $c_n = \lambda_{kn+\ell}$  satisfy the recursion

$$c_n = \lambda_k c_{n-1} - \lambda_{-k} c_{n-2} + c_{n-3}. \quad (17)$$

**Proof:** We proceed exactly as in the proof of Theorem 3, using the geometric sum formula and the relations (15) to obtain (16). Recursion (17) then follows from Corollary 5.

For numerical examples, choose  $z = 10^2$ ,  $k = 3$ ,  $\ell = 0, 1, 2$ . This yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{29402}{970199} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{3n}}{10^{2(n+1)}} = .030305122968 \\ &\quad \quad \quad 158 \\ &\quad \quad \quad \dots, \\ \frac{201}{970199} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{3n+1}}{10^{2(n+1)}} = .000207173990 \\ &\quad \quad \quad 209 \\ &\quad \quad \quad \dots, \\ \frac{19899}{970199} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{3n+2}}{10^{2(n+1)}} = .0205102251 \\ &\quad \quad \quad 119 \\ &\quad \quad \quad \dots \end{aligned}$$

The particular choice of the numbers  $\lambda_n$  is not essential for the conclusion in Theorem 6. In fact, let arbitrary complex numbers  $a_0, a_1, a_2$  be given. Then the system of three linear equations

$$d_1 \omega_1^n + d_2 \omega_2^n + d_3 \omega_3^n = a_n \quad (n = 0, 1, 2) \quad (18)$$

has the unique solution

$$d_1 = \frac{\omega_3 - \omega_2}{\sqrt{D}} \left( \frac{a_0}{\omega_1} + a_1 \omega_1 + a_2 \right) \text{ etc.,}$$

where  $D = -23$  is the discriminant of  $q$ . Use (18) to define  $a_n$  for all integers  $n$ . Then, from  $\omega_v^3 = \omega_v + 1$ , it follows that the  $a_n$  satisfy (13). Thus, any sequence  $(a_n)_n$  which obeys (13) can be represented in the form (18). Therefore, we may proceed as in the proof of Theorem 3, and the result is

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_{kn+\ell}}{z^{n+1}} = \frac{a_{\ell} z^2 + (a_{k+\ell} - \lambda_k a_{\ell}) z + a_{\ell-k}}{z^3 - \lambda_k z^2 + \lambda_{-k} z - 1} \quad \text{for } |z| > \omega_1^k. \quad (19)$$

It suffices to state and prove (19) for  $\ell = 0$ , since the case of a general  $\ell$  can be reduced to  $\ell = 0$  by a modification of  $a_0, a_1, a_2$ .

**6.** The validity of a result like (19) does not depend on the particular choice of the polynomial  $q$ . Let

$$q(z) = z^{m+1} - A_0 z^m - A_1 z^{m-1} - \dots - A_m$$

be any polynomial with only simple zeros  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_{m+1}$ . Then it follows as in



# GENERATING FUNCTIONS OF FIBONACCI-LIKE SEQUENCES

(18) that any sequence  $(a_n)_n$  which satisfies recursion (9) can be represented in the form

$$a_n = d_1 \omega_1^n + \cdots + d_{m+1} \omega_{m+1}^n$$

with uniquely-determined coefficients  $d_1, \dots, d_{m+1}$ . Thus, an analogue to formula (19) must hold for any such sequence.

As a final example, let me discuss the polynomial

$$q(z) = z^3 - z^2 - z - 1$$

and sequences  $(a_n)_n$  which obey

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + a_{n-3}. \quad (20)$$

The numbers  $T_n$  that satisfy  $T_0 = 1$ ,  $T_1 = 1$ ,  $T_2 = 2$  and the recursion (20) (with  $a_n$  replaced by  $T_n$ ) have been called the Tribonacci numbers in [3] and [4]. An equivalent of formula (11) for this particular sequence  $(T_n)_n$  has been proved in [4]. The zeros of  $q(1/z)$  have been computed in [3];  $q(z)$  has a real zero  $\zeta_1 = 1.83928\dots$  and a pair of conjugate complex zeros  $\zeta_2, \zeta_3 = \overline{\zeta_2}$ . An appropriate analogue to  $L_n$  and  $\lambda_n$  are the numbers

$$\Lambda_n = \zeta_1^n + \zeta_2^n + \zeta_3^n;$$

they satisfy  $\Lambda_0 = 3$ ,  $\Lambda_1 = 1$ ,  $\Lambda_2 = 3$  and the recursion (20) (with  $a_n$  replaced by  $\Lambda_n$ ). The corresponding formula for the Tribonacci numbers is

$$T_n = d_1 \zeta_1^n + d_2 \zeta_2^n + d_3 \zeta_3^n,$$

where

$$d_1 = \frac{\zeta_3 - \zeta_2}{\sqrt{D}} \cdot \zeta_1^2, \text{ etc.},$$

and  $D = -44$  is the discriminant of  $q$ . The analogue to (19) reads

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_{kn}}{z^{n+1}} = \frac{a_0 z^2 + (a_k - \Lambda_k a_0)z + a_{-k}}{z^3 - \Lambda_k z^2 + \Lambda_{-k} z - 1} \quad \text{for } |z| > \zeta_1^k$$

and any sequence  $(a_n)_n$  that satisfies (20).

## REFERENCES

1. R. H. Hudson & C. F. Winans. "A Complete Characterization of the Decimal Fractions that Can Be Represented as  $\sum 10^{-k(i+1)} F_{\alpha i}$ , Where  $F_{\alpha i}$  is the  $\alpha i^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci Number." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 5 (1981):414-21.
2. C. T. Long. "The Decimal Expansion of 1/89 and Related Results." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 1 (1981):53-55.
3. C. P. McCarty. "A Formula for Tribonacci Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 5 (1981):391-93.
4. A. Scott, T. Delaney, & V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. "The Tribonacci Sequence." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 15, no. 3 (1977):193-200.

◆◆◆◆

## ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

S. P. MOHANTY and A. M. S. RAMASAMY

*Indian Institute of Technology, Kanpur-208016, India*

(Submitted May 1983)

### INTRODUCTION

**Definition 1:** Let  $k$  be a given positive integer. Two integers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are said to have the property  $p_k$  (resp.  $p_{-k}$ ) if  $\alpha\beta + k$  (resp.  $\alpha\beta - k$ ) is a perfect square. A set of integers is said to be a  $P_k$  set if every pair of distinct elements in the set has the property  $p_k$ . A sequence of integers is said to be a  $P_{r,k}$  sequence if every  $r$  consecutive terms of the sequence constitute a  $P_k$  set.

Given a positive integer  $k$ , we can always find two integers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  having the property  $p_k$ . Conversely, given two integers  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , we can always find a positive integer  $k$  such that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  have the property  $p_k$ . If  $S$  is a given  $P_k$  set and  $j$  is a given integer, then by multiplying all the elements of  $S$  by  $j$ , we obtain a  $P_{kj^2}$  set. Suppose we are given two numbers  $a_1 < a_2$  with property  $p_k$  and we want to extend the set  $\{a_1, a_2\}$  such that the resulting set is also a  $P_k$  set. Toward this end, in this paper we construct a  $P_{3,k}$  sequence  $\{a_n\}$ .

### ASSOCIATED $P_{3,k}$ SEQUENCES

Suppose

$$a_1a_2 + k = b_1^2 \tag{1}$$

and let  $a_3 \in \{a_1, a_2, \dots\}$ , a  $P_k$  set. Then we have

$$a_1a_3 + k = x^2 \tag{2}$$

and

$$a_2a_3 + k = y^2 \tag{3}$$

for some integers  $x$  and  $y$ . Eliminating  $a_3$  from (2) and (3), we obtain

$$X^2 - a_1a_2Y^2 = ka_2(a_2 - a_1), \tag{4}$$

where  $X = a_2x$ ,  $Y = y$ . Using (1) in (4), we obtain

$$X^2 - (b_1^2 - k)Y^2 = k(a_2^2 - b_1^2 + k). \tag{5}$$

One can check that  $X = a_2(a_1 + b_1)$ ,  $Y = a_2 + b_1$ , is always a solution of (5). When  $b_1^2 - k$  is positive and square free, (5) has an infinite number of solutions. Henceforth, we concentrate on the solution  $X = a_2(a_1 + b_1)$ ,  $Y = a_2 + b_1$  of (5). This gives

$$a_2a_3 + k = b_2^2,$$

$$a_1a_3 + k = c_1^2,$$

with

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

$$b_2 = a_2 + b_1, \quad c_1 = a_1 + b_1, \quad a_3 = b_2 + c_1.$$

In what follows, we construct three sequences  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ , and  $\{c_n\}$ , where  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$ ,  $a_3$ ,  $b_1$ ,  $b_2$ , and  $c_1$  are as above. We say that  $\{b_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$  are the sequences associated with  $\{a_n\}$ . Taking

$$b_3 = a_3 + b_2, \quad c_2 = a_2 + b_2, \quad a_4 = b_3 + c_2,$$

we can see that  $2(a_3 + a_2) - a_1 = a_4$ . Using this fact, we obtain

$$a_2 a_4 + k = c_2^2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_3 a_4 + k = b_3^2.$$

For the construction of the sequences  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ , and  $\{c_n\}$ , the following diagram can be helpful.

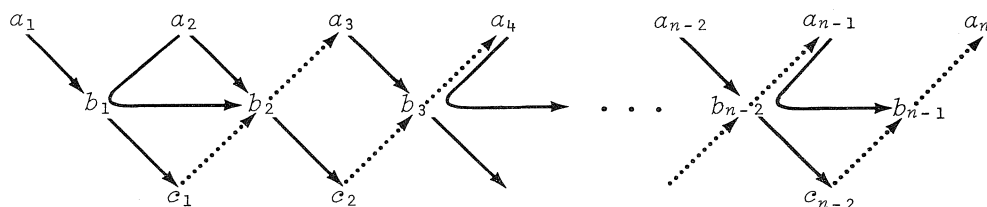


Diagram 1

Explanation for the diagram: Write  $b_1 = \sqrt{a_1 a_2 + k}$  in the second row, in the space between  $a_1$  and  $a_2$ ; and write  $c_1 = \sqrt{a_1 a_3 + k}$  in the third row, in the space beneath  $a_2$ . Along the arrows shown by thick lines, sum the elements of the first and second rows to obtain the elements of the third row. Along the curved arrows, sum the elements of the first and second rows to obtain the elements of the second row. Along the arrows shown by dotted lines, sum the elements of the second and third rows to obtain the elements of the first row. The preceding discussion shows that the scheme provided in the diagram is valid for  $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, b_1, b_2, b_3, c_1$ , and  $c_2$ . Let  $n > 2$ . Assuming the validity of Diagram 1 for  $a_1, \dots, a_n, b_1, \dots, b_{n-1}$ , and  $c_1, \dots, c_{n-2}$ , it can be proved without much difficulty that

$$2(a_n + a_{n-1}) - a_{n-2} = a_{n+1}, \quad (6)$$

and that the scheme is valid for  $a_1, \dots, a_{n+1}, b_1, \dots, b_n$ , and  $c_1, \dots, c_{n-1}$ .

Theorem 1. The three sequences  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ , and  $\{c_n\}$  have the same recurrence relation.

Proof: We have  $a_{n+1} = 2(a_n + a_{n-1}) - a_{n-2}$  [see (6)]. Now

$$\begin{aligned} b_{n+1} &= a_{n+1} + b_n = c_{n-1} + 2b_n = a_{n-1} + b_{n-1} + 2b_n \\ &= 2b_n + b_{n-1} + (b_{n-1} - b_{n-2}) = 2(b_n + b_{n-1}) - b_{n-2}, \end{aligned} \quad (7)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} c_{n+1} &= a_{n+1} + b_{n+1} = 2a_{n+1} + b_n = 2(c_{n-1} + b_n) + b_n \\ &= 2c_{n-1} + b_n + 2(c_n - a_n) = 2(c_n + c_{n-1}) + (a_n + b_{n-1}) - 2a_n \\ &= 2(c_n + c_{n-1}) - c_{n-2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Hence, the theorem is proved.

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

We shall now obtain additional relations. First, using

$$a_{n+1} = c_{n+1} - b_{n+1} \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+2} = c_n + b_{n+1},$$

we have

$$a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} = c_n + c_{n+1};$$

that is,

$$a_{n+1} - c_n = -(a_{n+2} - c_{n+1}). \quad (9)$$

Next, from

$$b_n = c_n - a_n \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = b_{n+1} - a_{n+1},$$

we obtain

$$2b_n = (c_n + b_{n+1}) - a_{n+1} - a_n,$$

which yields

$$2b_n = a_{n+2} - a_{n+1} - a_n. \quad (10)$$

Next,

$$\begin{aligned} a_{n+2} - a_{n+1} + a_n &= (b_{n+1} + c_n) - (b_{n+1} - b_n) + a_n \\ &= c_n + b_n + a_n \\ &= 2c_n. \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

From (10), we obtain

$$a_{n+2} = a_{n+1} + a_n + 2\sqrt{a_n a_{n+1} + k},$$

and from (6) we have

$$a_{n+2} = 2(a_{n+1} + a_n) - a_{n-1}.$$

Hence,

$$a_{n+1} + a_n - a_{n-1} = 2\sqrt{a_n a_{n+1} + k},$$

which gives the relation

$$a_{n+1}^2 + a_n^2 + a_{n-1}^2 - 2a_{n-1}a_n - 2a_{n-1}a_{n+1} - 2a_n a_{n+1} = 4k. \quad (12)$$

## FIBONACCI RELATIONSHIPS

Next we shall exhibit a relationship between either of the sequences  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ , and  $\{c_n\}$  and the Fibonacci sequence  $\{F_n\}$ . The Fibonacci sequence  $\{F_n\}$  is defined by

$$F_1 = F_2 = 1, \quad F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n.$$

V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and G. E. Bergum [1] have shown that the even-subscripted Fibonacci numbers constitute a  $P_{3,1}$  sequence. We can set

$$a_{n-1} = F_{2n}, \quad a_n = F_{2n+2}, \quad \text{and} \quad a_{n+1} = F_{2n+4}$$

in (12) and obtain

$$F_{2n}^2 + F_{2n+2}^2 + F_{2n+4}^2 - 2F_{2n}F_{2n+2} - 2F_{2n+2}F_{2n+4} - 2F_{2n}F_{2n+4} = 4.$$

**Theorem 2.** Any sequence  $\{a_n\}$  satisfying (6) is given by

$$a_n = -F_{n-3}F_{n-2}a_1 + F_{n-3}F_{n-1}a_2 + F_{n-2}F_{n-1}a_3, \quad n \geq 4. \quad (13)$$

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

Proof: From (6), we get

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_4 &= 2(\alpha_3 + \alpha_2) - \alpha_1 = -F_1F_2\alpha_1 + F_1F_3\alpha_2 + F_2F_3\alpha_3, \\ \alpha_5 &= 2(\alpha_4 + \alpha_3) - \alpha_2 = -2\alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 6\alpha_3 = -F_2F_3\alpha_1 + F_2F_4\alpha_2 + F_3F_4\alpha_3, \\ \alpha_6 &= 2(\alpha_5 + \alpha_4) - \alpha_3 = -6\alpha_1 + 10\alpha_2 + 15\alpha_3 = -F_3F_4\alpha_1 + F_3F_5\alpha_2 + F_4F_5\alpha_3. \end{aligned}$$

So the theorem is true for  $n = 4, 5, 6$ . Let  $n \geq 4$  and assume that the theorem is true for all integers  $j$  up to  $n$ . Using (6) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{n+1} &= 2(-F_{n-3}F_{n-2}\alpha_1 + F_{n-3}F_{n-1}\alpha_2 + F_{n-2}F_{n-1}\alpha_3) \\ &\quad + 2(-F_{n-4}F_{n-3}\alpha_1 + F_{n-4}F_{n-2}\alpha_2 + F_{n-3}F_{n-2}\alpha_3) \\ &\quad - (-F_{n-5}F_{n-4}\alpha_1 + F_{n-5}F_{n-3}\alpha_2 + F_{n-4}F_{n-3}\alpha_3); \end{aligned}$$

that is,

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{n+1} &= (-2F_{n-3}F_{n-2} - 2F_{n-4}F_{n-3} + F_{n-5}F_{n-4})\alpha_1 \\ &\quad + (2F_{n-3}F_{n-1} + 2F_{n-4}F_{n-2} - F_{n-5}F_{n-3})\alpha_2 \\ &\quad + (2F_{n-2}F_{n-1} + 2F_{n-3}F_{n-2} - F_{n-4}F_{n-3})\alpha_3. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

The coefficient of  $\alpha_1$  in (14) is given by

$$\begin{aligned} -[2F_{n-3}(F_{n-2} + F_{n-4}) - F_{n-4}(F_{n-3} - F_{n-4})] &= -(2F_{n-3}F_{n-2} + F_{n-3}F_{n-4} + F_{n-4}^2) \\ &= -(2F_{n-3}F_{n-2} + F_{n-4}F_{n-2}) \\ &= -F_{n-2}(2F_{n-3} + F_{n-4}) \\ &= -F_{n-2}(F_{n-3} + F_{n-2}) \\ &= -F_{n-2}F_{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, upon simplification, we have the coefficients of  $\alpha_2$  and  $\alpha_3$  in (14) equal to  $F_{n-2}F_n$  and  $F_{n-1}F_n$ , respectively. This proves Theorem 2.

Remark 1. The relations (6), (7), and (8) imply that (13) remains true if the  $a$ 's are replaced by  $b$ 's or by  $c$ 's.

Now we express  $b$ 's in terms of  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ . We have

$$2b_2 = -\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3.$$

Using  $\alpha_4 = 2(\alpha_3 + \alpha_2) - \alpha_1$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2b_3 &= -\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \alpha_4 = -\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3, \\ 2b_4 &= -\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + 3\alpha_4 = -3\alpha_1 + 5\alpha_2 + 7\alpha_3. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose  $2b_n = -r_n\alpha_1 + s_n\alpha_2 + t_n\alpha_3$ . Then

$$2b_{n+1} = -r_n\alpha_2 + s_n\alpha_3 + t_n\alpha_4 = -t_n\alpha_1 + 2(t_n - r_n)\alpha_2 + (2t_n + s_n)\alpha_3.$$

Hence,  $2b_{n+1} = -r_{n+1}\alpha_1 + s_{n+1}\alpha_2 + t_{n+1}\alpha_3$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} t_2 &= 1, \quad t_3 = 3, \quad t_4 = 7, \\ r_{n+1} &= t_n, \\ s_{n+1} &= 2t_n - t_{n-1}, \\ t_{n+1} &= 2(t_n + t_{n-1}) - t_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 4). \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

Similarly, we have  $2c_{n+1} = -u_{n+1}a_1 + v_{n+1}a_2 + w_{n+1}a_3$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} w_1 &= w_2 = 1, \quad w_3 = 5, \\ u_{n+1} &= w_n, \\ v_{n+1} &= 2w_n - w_{n-1}, \\ w_{n+1} &= 2(w_n + w_{n-1}) - w_{n-2} \quad (n \geq 3). \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

Thus, the sequences  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$ ,  $\{c_n\}$ ,  $\{t_n\}$ , and  $\{w_n\}$  have the same recurrence relation.

Next we consider the possibility for the coincidence of the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$ . In this regard, we have the following:

**Theorem 3.** Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a  $P_{3,k}$  sequence with the associated sequences  $\{b_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$ . The following statements are equivalent:

- (i)  $a_{n+1} = c_n$  for some integer  $n \geq 1$
- (ii)  $a_{n+1} = c_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (iii)  $a_{n+1} = b_n + c_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (iv)  $c_{n+1} = b_{n+1} + c_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (v)  $a_{n+1} = a_n + b_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (vi)  $b_{n+2} = 3b_{n+1} - b_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (vii)  $c_{n+2} = 3c_{n+1} - c_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (viii)  $a_{n+2} = 3a_{n+1} - a_n$  for all integers  $n$
- (ix)  $k = a_{n+1}^2 - 3a_n a_{n+1} + a_n^2$  for all integers  $n$
- (x)  $-k = b_{n+1}^2 - 3b_n b_{n+1} + b_n^2$  for all integers  $n$
- (xi)  $k = c_{n+1}^2 - 3c_n c_{n+1} + c_n^2$  for all integers  $n$
- (xii)  $a_n = -F_{2n-4}a_1 + F_{2n-2}a_2$  for all integers  $n$

and

$$b_n = -F_{2n-3}a_1 + F_{2n-1}a_2 \quad \text{for all integers } n \geq 3$$

- (xiii)  $b_n$  is a  $P_{3,-k}$  sequence with the associated sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  (where  $b_n b_{n+1} - k = a_{n+1}^2$ ).

**Proof:** The following scheme may be adopted.

- (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v)  $\Rightarrow$  (vi)  $\Rightarrow$  (vii)  $\Rightarrow$  (viii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i),
- (v)  $\Rightarrow$  (ix)  $\Rightarrow$  (viii), (v)  $\Rightarrow$  (x)  $\Rightarrow$  (vi);
- (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (xi)  $\Rightarrow$  (vii);
- (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (xii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) and (x)  $\Rightarrow$  (xiii)  $\Rightarrow$  (x).

The proof itself is left to the reader.

## F-TYPE SEQUENCES

**Definition 2:** Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a  $P_{3,k}$  sequence together with associated sequences  $\{b_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$ . We say that  $\{a_n\}$  is an  $F$ -type sequence if the sequence

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

$$\{a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, a_3, b_3, \dots\},$$

obtained by juxtaposing the two sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$ , is of Fibonacci type, i.e.,  $f_1 = a_1$ ,  $f_2 = b_1$ , and  $f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$ ,  $n \geq 3$ .

**Theorem 4.** A  $P_{3,k}$  sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with the associated sequences  $\{b_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$  for which any one of the equivalent statements in Theorem 3 holds is an  $F$ -type sequences. Conversely, given a Fibonacci-type sequence

$$T = \{g, h, g + h, g + 2h, \dots\},$$

where  $g$  and  $h$  are two positive integers with  $g < h$ , if  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  are the sequences formed by taking the terms in the odd and even places, respectively, of  $T$ , in the same order as they appear in  $T$ , there is an integer  $k$  such that  $\{a_n\}$  is an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence for which the equivalent statements in Theorem 3 hold.

**Proof:** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Using  $c_{n-1} = a_{n-1} + b_{n-1}$ , we obtain  $a_n = a_{n-1} + b_{n-1}$  for  $n \geq 2$ . We have that  $b_n = a_{n-1} + b_{n-1}$  for  $n \geq 2$ . Hence, the sequence  $\{a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, \dots\}$  is of the Fibonacci type.

( $\Leftarrow$ ) We have

$$a_1 = g, \quad b_1 = h,$$

$$a_n = F_{2n-3}g + F_{2n-2}h, \quad b_n = F_{2n-2}g + F_{2n-1}h \quad (n \geq 2), \quad (17)$$

where  $\{F_n\}$  is the Fibonacci sequence. One can check that

$$a_n + a_{n+2} = 3a_{n+1} \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1. \quad (18)$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} & (a_{n+2}^2 - 3a_{n+1}a_{n+2} + a_{n+1}^2) - (a_{n+1}^2 - 3a_na_{n+1} + a_n^2) \\ &= (a_{n+2}^2 - a_n^2) - 3a_{n+1}(a_{n+2} - a_n) \\ &= (a_{n+2} - a_n)(a_{n+2} + a_n - 3a_{n+1}) = 0 \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have

$$a_{n+1}^2 - 3a_na_{n+1} + a_n^2 = a_{n+2}^2 - 3a_{n+1}a_{n+2} + a_{n+1}^2 = \text{constant, for all } n.$$

Let  $a_{n+1}^2 - 3a_na_{n+1} + a_n^2 = k$ . In particular, putting  $n = 1$ , we get

$$k = h^2 - gh - g^2. \quad (19)$$

We have, using (19),

$$\begin{aligned} a_na_{n+1} + k &= (F_{2n-3}F_{2n-1} - 1)g^2 + (F_{2n-3}F_{2n} + F_{2n-2}F_{2n-1} - 1)gh \\ &\quad + (F_{2n-2}F_{2n} + 1)h^2. \end{aligned}$$

It can be seen that  $F_{2n-3}F_{2n} - 1 = F_{2n-2}F_{2n-1}$ . Therefore,

$$a_na_{n+1} + k = F_{2n-2}^2g^2 + 2F_{2n-2}F_{2n-1}gh + F_{2n-1}^2h^2 = b_n^2.$$

Next,

$$\begin{aligned} a_{n-1}a_n + k &= (F_{2n-5}F_{2n-1} - 1)g^2 + (F_{2n-5}F_{2n} + F_{2n-4}F_{2n-1} - 1)gh \\ &\quad + (F_{2n-4}F_{2n-1} + 1)h^2. \end{aligned}$$

After some calculation, we have

$$a_{n-1}a_n + k = F_{2n-3}^2g^2 + 2F_{2n-2}F_{2n-3}gh + F_{2n-2}^2h^2 = a_n^2.$$

Consequently, the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence with the associated  $c$ -sequence given by  $c_n = a_{n+1}$  for all integers  $n \geq 1$ .

# ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

## ASSOCIATED DIOPHANTINE EQUATIONS

**Theorem 5.** Given a positive integer  $k$ , an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence exists if and only if the Diophantine equation

$$x^2 - 5y^2 = 4k \quad (20)$$

is solvable in integers.

**Proof:** ( $\Rightarrow$ ) Let  $\{a_n\}$  be an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence with the associated sequence  $\{b_n\}$  so that  $\{a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, \dots\}$  is a sequence of the Fibonacci type wherein the relations are given by (17). Then

$$k = h^2 - gh - g^2;$$

that is,

$$h^2 - gh - (g^2 + k) = 0.$$

Treating this as a quadratic equation in  $h$ , we obtain  $h = \frac{g \pm \sqrt{5g^2 + 4k}}{2}$ . This implies

$$5g^2 + 4k = A^2$$

for some integer  $A$ . Hence, equation (20) is solvable in integers.

( $\Leftarrow$ ) Let  $(x, y)$  be an integral solution of (20). Then  $x \equiv y \pmod{2}$ . Form the Fibonacci-type sequence  $\{a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2, \dots\}$  by taking  $a_1 = y$ ,  $b_1 = (x + y)/2$ . Then by Theorem 4 there is an integer  $k'$  such that  $\{a_n\}$  is an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k'}$  sequence. We have  $k' = a_2^2 - 3a_1a_2 + a_1^2$ . Since

$$a_2 = a_1 + b_2 = \frac{x + 3y}{2}$$

we obtain

$$k' = \frac{x^2 - 5y^2}{4} = k.$$

**Theorem 6.** Given a positive integer  $k$ , a necessary condition for the existence of an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence is that

$$k \not\equiv 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 13, 14, 17, 18 \pmod{20}$$

and

$$k \not\equiv 10, 15, 35, 40, 60, 65, 85, 90 \pmod{100}.$$

We omit the proof.

To prove our next result, we need the following:

**Theorem 7.** (Nagell [4]) If  $u + v\sqrt{D}$  and  $u' + v'\sqrt{D}$  are two given solutions of the equation

$$u^2 - Dv^2 = C \quad (D: \text{positive, square free}),$$

a necessary and sufficient condition for these two solutions to belong to the same class is that the two numbers  $(uu' - vv'D)/C$  and  $(vu' - uv')/C$  be integers.

In the following theorem, we prove a result for the Diophantine equation (20) by considering the terms of the corresponding  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence.



**Theorem 8.** Given a positive integer  $k$ , the number of distinct classes of solutions of equation (20) is divisible by 3.

Proof: If (20) is not solvable in integers, then the theorem holds trivially. Assume the solvability of (20). Let  $(x_1, y_1)$  be an integral solution of (20). Take  $a_1 = y_1$ ,  $b_1 = (x_1 + y_1)/2$  and  $a_2 = a_1 + b_1$ ; i.e.,  $a_2 = (x_1 + 3y_1)/2$ . Then by Theorem 5 we have

$$k = a_2^2 - 3a_1a_2 + a_1^2$$

and  $\{a_n\}$  is an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence. We have

$$b_2 = a_2 + b_1 = x_1 + 2y_1,$$

$$a_3 = a_2 + b_2 = \frac{3x_1 + 7y_1}{2}, \quad b_3 = a_3 + b_2 = \frac{5x_1 + 11y_1}{2},$$

$$a_4 = a_3 + b_3 = 4x_1 + 9y_1, \quad b_4 = a_4 + b_3 = \frac{13x_1 + 29y_1}{2}.$$

Choose  $x_i, y_i$  ( $i = 2, 3, 4$ ) such that  $y_i = a_i$  and  $(x_i + y_i)/2 = b_i$ ; i.e.,  $x_i = 2b_i - y_i$ . Then  $x_2 = (3x_1 + 5y_1)/2$ ,  $x_3 = (7x_1 + 15y_1)/2$ ,  $x_4 = (9x_1 + 20y_1)/2$ . One can easily check that  $x_i + \sqrt{5}y_i$  ( $i = 2, 3, 4$ ) are solutions of (20). Since

$$\frac{x_1y_2 - y_1x_2}{4k} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \frac{x_1y_3 - y_1x_3}{4k} = \frac{3}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x_2y_3 - y_2x_3}{4k} = \frac{1}{2},$$

by Theorem 7 it follows that each  $x_i + \sqrt{5}y_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) belongs to a distinct class of solutions of (20). Now

$$x_4 + \sqrt{5}y_4 = (9x_1 + 20y_1) + \sqrt{5}(4x_1 + 9y_1) = (x_1 + \sqrt{5}y_1)(9 + 4\sqrt{5})^n.$$

Since  $9 + 4\sqrt{5}$  is the fundamental solution of the equation

$$u^2 - 5v^2 = 1,$$

it follows that  $x_1 + \sqrt{5}y_1$  and  $x_4 + \sqrt{5}y_4$  belong to the same class of solutions of (20). Thus, given a solution  $x_1 + \sqrt{5}y_1$  of (20), we obtain three consecutive terms  $a_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) of an  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence which in turn yield two more solutions  $x_i + \sqrt{5}y_i$  ( $i = 2, 3$ ) of (20) such that  $x_i + \sqrt{5}y_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) belong to different classes of solutions of (20). Further, it follows by simple induction that, for any integers  $i, i', j$ , the terms  $a_{3i+j}$  and  $a_{3i'+j}$  ( $j = 0, 1, 2$ ) yield solutions of (20) which belong to the same class. Hence, every  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequence contributes exactly three distinct classes of solutions of (20). Consequently, the number of distinct classes of solutions of (20) is divisible by 3.

**Definition 3:** Given a positive integer  $k$ , two  $P_{3,k}$  sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{a'_n\}$  are said to be distinct if there do not exist integers  $r$  and  $s$  such that  $a_r = a'_s$ .

**Theorem 9.** Given a positive integer  $k$ , the number of distinct  $F$ -type  $P_{3,k}$  sequences is equal to  $1/3$  of the number of distinct classes of solutions of (20).

Proof: Follows from Theorem 8.

#### CONCLUDING COMMENTS

Our next investigation is on  $P_{r,k}$  sequences with  $r \geq 4$ . Regarding this, we prove the following theorem.

## ON $P_{r,k}$ SEQUENCES

**Theorem 10.** If  $k \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , then there is no  $P_{r,k}$  sequence with  $r \geq 4$ .

**Proof:** We follow the reasoning given by S. Mohanty [3]. Let  $k \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  and let  $\{a_n\}$  be a  $P_{4,k}$  sequence. Then, for any two integers  $i, j$  satisfying  $|j - i| \leq 3$ , we have

$$a_i a_j + k = B^2 \quad (21)$$

for some integer  $B$ . If  $a_i \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  or if  $a_j \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ , then (21) implies  $B^2 \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , which is impossible. Hence, neither  $a_i$  nor  $a_j$  is  $0 \pmod{4}$ . If  $a_i \equiv a_j \pmod{4}$ , we have a contradiction; thus the elements  $a_i, a_{i+1}, a_{i+2}$ , and  $a_{i+3}$  do not share the property  $p_k$ .

The foregoing complements the work of Horadam, Loh, and Shannon [2], whose Pellian sequence  $\{Q_n(N)\}$  is a  $P_{3,N-2}$  sequence which is there also related to the even-subscripted Fibonacci numbers, to perfect squares, and to Diophantine equations.

### ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The authors are extremely grateful to the referee for his helpful comments and suggestions.

### REFERENCES

1. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & G. E. Bergum. "A Problem of Fermat and the Fibonacci Sequence." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 15, no. 4 (1977):323-30.
2. A. F. Horadam, R. P. Loh, & A. C. Shannon. "Divisibility Properties of Some Fibonacci-Type Sequences." In *Combinatorial Mathematics*, Vol. VI: *Lecture Notes in Mathematics* 748. Edited by A. F. Horadam & W. D. Wallis. Berlin: Springer Verlag, 1979, pp. 55-64.
3. S. P. Mohanty. "On  $S(p)^m$  Sets." (Unpublished MS.)
4. T. Nagell. *Introduction to Number Theory*. New York: Wiley, 1951, Chapter 6, pp. 204-05.

◆◆◆◆

# A CONGRUENCE FOR A CLASS OF EXPONENTIAL NUMBERS

A. KYRIAKOYSSIS

University of Athens, Couponia, Athens (621)-Greece

(Submitted June 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

A sequence of exponential numbers, say  $P_n$ , is defined by its exponential generating function as

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n x^n / n! = \exp\{g(x)\}$$

for some (formal) power series  $g(x)$  with constant term zero.

As regards Bell numbers [ $g(x) = e^x - 1$ ], Lunnon, Pleasants, and Stephens [6] showed that for each positive integer  $n$ , there exist integers  $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-1}$  such that, for all  $m \geq 0$ ,

$$P_{m+n} + \alpha_{n-1} P_{m+n-1} + \dots + \alpha_0 P_m \equiv 0 \pmod{n!}.$$

In this paper, we show a similar congruence for the exponential numbers  $P_n$  when  $g(x)$  is a certain series function (Section 2). Special cases include numbers  $P_n$  equal to the number of permutations of  $n$  elements having cycles with given maximal and minimal size or equal to the sum of the horizontal entries of the table of Jordan [5, p. 223], also for  $P_n$  equal to the generalized derangement numbers.

## 2. THE CONGRUENCE

Theorem. Suppose

$$g(x) = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} b_j \frac{x^j}{j}$$

where the  $b_j$  are integers. Let

$$e^{g(x)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n \frac{x^n}{n!} \tag{1}$$

and let

$$\frac{y^k}{k!} e^{-g(y)} = \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} D_{n,k} \frac{y^n}{n!}. \tag{2}$$

Then, for each  $m, n \geq 0$ ,

$$\sum_{k=0}^n D_{n,k} P_{m+k} \equiv 0 \pmod{n!}.$$

Proof: Let  $f(x) = e^{g(x)}$ . Then

# A CONGRUENCE FOR A CLASS OF EXPONENTIAL NUMBERS

$$e^{-g(y)} f(x+y) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} e^{-g(y)} \frac{y^k}{k!} f^{(k)}(x) = \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^m}{m!} \frac{y^n}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^n D_{n,k} P_{m+k}.$$

Thus, it is sufficient to show that the coefficient of  $x^m/m!$  in  $e^{-g(y)} f(x+y)$  is a power series in  $y$  with integer coefficients.

Now we have

$$e^{-g(y)} f(x+y) = \exp \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g^{(i)}(y) \frac{x^i}{i!} \right].$$

Since  $g'(y) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} b_{j+1} y^j$ ,  $g^{(i)}(y)$  is a power series in  $y$  with integer coefficients,  $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g^{(i)}(y) x^i/i!$  is a Hurwitz series in  $x$  (in the sense that the coefficient of  $x_i/i!$  is a power series with integer coefficients). Thus,

$$\exp \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g^{(i)}(y) \frac{x^i}{i!} \right]$$

is also a Hurwitz series in  $x$ , which proves the theorem.

Remarks: We have that  $g(x)$  is a Hurwitz series. Using the fact that  $[g(x)]^k/k!$  is also a Hurwitz series for any nonnegative integer  $k$ , we define the integers  $A(n, k)$  by

$$\sum_{n=k}^{\infty} A(n, k) x^n/n! = [g(x)]^k/k!. \quad (3)$$

Then, from (1), we have

$$P_n = \sum_{k=0}^n A(n, k), \quad P_0 = 1. \quad (4)$$

From (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} D_{n,k} y^n/n! &= (y^k/k!) \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \{g(y)\}^i/i! \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \sum_{j=i}^{\infty} A(j, i) y^{j+k}/k!j! \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \sum_{n=i+k}^{\infty} A(n-k, i) \binom{n}{k} y^n/n! \\ &= \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} \sum_{i=0}^{n-k} \binom{n-k}{i} (-1)^i A(n-k, i) y^n/n!, \end{aligned}$$

and consequently,

$$D_{n,k} = \binom{n}{k} \sum_{i=0}^{n-k} (-1)^i A(n-k, i).$$

For tabulation purposes, we may obtain a recurrence relation for the integers  $D_{n,k}$ . Using (2), we have

$$D(u, y) = \sum_{n,k} D_{n,k} u^k y^n/n! = e^{-g(y)+uy}. \quad (5)$$

## A CONGRUENCE FOR A CLASS OF EXPONENTIAL NUMBERS

By differentiating both sides of (5) with respect to  $y$ , we obtain

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y} D(u, y) = -e^{-g(y)} g'(y) e^{uy} + e^{-g(y)} e^{uy} u = D(u, y) \{-g'(y) + u\}.$$

Equating coefficients of  $u^k y^n / n!$ , we obtain

$$D_{n+1, k} = D_{n, k-1} - \sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} b_{n-i+1} (n-i+1)! D_{i, k} \quad \text{for } n, k \geq 0,$$

with  $D_{0,0} = 1$  and  $D_{n,k} = 0$  for  $k > n$  or  $k < 0$ .

It may be noted that  $f(x) = e^{g(x)}$  counts permutations in which a cycle of length  $j$  is weighted  $b_j$ .

### 3. SPECIAL CASES

We shall now give some special cases of  $g(x)$  for which the numbers  $P_n$  are of great interest in Combinatorics.

a.  $g(x) = \sum_{j \in S} x^j / j$  where  $S$  is any set of positive integers.

Then  $f(x) = e^{g(x)}$  counts permutations with all cycle lengths in  $S$ . For  $S = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $g(x) = x + x^2/2$ , and the numbers

$$P_n = t_n = \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^n A(n, k)$$

have been studied by Moore [3], Moser and Wyman [7], and others. From [4], we have a congruence for  $t_n$  which is a special case of our theorem.

b.  $g(x) = \sum_{j=r}^s \frac{(s)_j}{(j-1)!} \frac{x^j}{j} = (1+x)^s - \sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \frac{(s)_j}{(j-1)!} \frac{x^j}{j},$

$r, s$  integers,  $1 \leq r < s$ .

Then  $A(n, k)$  have occurred as coefficients in the  $k$ -fold convolution of binomial distributions truncated at the point  $r-1$  (see [1]). In the case in which  $r=1$ ,  $A(n, k) = (1/n!) [\Delta^k (sx)_n]_{x=0}$  (see [2]), and the numbers

$$P_n = \sum_{k=\lfloor n/s \rfloor}^n A(n, k)$$

occur in combinatorial analysis being in fact  $P_n$  is equal to the sum of the horizontal entries of the table of Jordan (see [5, p. 223]).

c.  $g(x) = (s-1)x + s \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} x^j / j = -x - s \log(1-x)$ ,  $s$  an integer,  $s \geq 1$ .

Then  $P_n$  is equal to the generalized derangement numbers  $d(n, s)$  [for  $s=1$ , we have the derangement number  $d(n)$ ].

### ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Thanks are due to the referee, whose suggestions greatly improved the presentation of this material.

## A CONGRUENCE FOR A CLASS OF EXPONENTIAL NUMBERS

### REFERENCES

1. T. Cacoullos & Ch. Charalambides. "M.V.U.E. for Truncated Discrete Distributions." In *Progress in Statistics*, Vol. I, pp. 133-44. Edited by J. Gani et al. Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1974.
2. Ch. Charalambides. "A New Kind of Numbers Appearing in the  $n$ -Fold Convolution of Truncated Binomial and Negative Binomial Distributions." *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* 33 (1977):279-88.
3. S. Chowla, I. N. Herstein, & W. K. Moore. "On Recursions Connected with Symmetric Groups I." *Canad. J. Math.* 3 (1951):328-34.
4. Ira Gessel. "Congruences for Bell and Tangent Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 2 (1981):137-44.
5. C. Jordan. *Calculus of Finite Differences*. 3rd ed. New York: Chelsea Publishing Company, 1965.
6. W. F. Lunnon, P. A. B. Pleasants, & N. M. Stephens. "Arithmetic Properties of Bell Numbers to a Composite Modulus I." *Acta Arith.* 35 (1979):1-16.
7. Leo Moser & Max Wyman. "On Solutions of  $X^d = 1$  in Symmetric Groups." *Canad. J. Math.* 7 (1955):159-68.

◆◆◆◆

# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

A. J. STAM

*Mathematisch Instituut der Rijksuniversiteit, 9700 AV Groningen, Netherlands*  
(Submitted July 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

In this paper, we study a sequence of positive integers defined by recurrence that have applications in combinatorics and probability theory.

Let  $\sigma$  be a permutation of  $\mathbb{N}_n = \{1, \dots, n\}$ , i.e., a bijection  $\mathbb{N}_n \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_n$ . Then  $k \in \mathbb{N}_n$  is a regeneration point of  $\sigma$  if  $\sigma(\mathbb{N}_k) = \mathbb{N}_k$ . Here  $\sigma$  will be a random permutation, i.e., we consider  $\sigma$  to be chosen at random from the set  $S_n$  of permutations of  $\mathbb{N}_n$ . Equivalently, we define a probability measure  $P_n$  on the power set of  $S_n$  by  $P_n(\{\sigma_0\}) = P_n(\sigma = \sigma_0) = 1/n!$ ,  $\sigma_0 \in S_n$ . Expectation with respect to  $P_n$  will be denoted by  $E_n$ .

Let  $A_k$  be the event that  $k$  is a regeneration point of the random permutation. Then

$$P_n(A_k) = k!(n-k)!/n! = \binom{n}{k}^{-1}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}_n. \quad (1.1)$$

For the event that  $k_1, \dots, k_r$ , with  $1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_r \leq n$ , are regeneration points, we have

$$P_n(A_{k_1} A_{k_2} \dots A_{k_r}) = k_1!(k_2 - k_1)! \dots (k_r - k_{r-1})!(n - k_r)!/n!. \quad (1.2)$$

Let  $M$  be the total number of regeneration points in  $\sigma$ . The (factorial) moments of  $M$  can be expressed in terms of (1.2), e.g.,

$$E_n M = 1 + Q_n = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} P_n(A_k) = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k}^{-1}. \quad (1.3)$$

Note that  $n$  is always a regeneration point.

The theory of regeneration points is dominated by the numbers  $c_n$  or  $c(n)$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , where  $c_n$  is the number of elements of  $S_n$  that have only one regeneration point, or

$$P_n(M = 1) = c_n/n!, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (1.4)$$

This will be seen in Section 2. Here we mention the relation

$$P_n(k) = P_n(v = k) = c_k(n-k)!/n!, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}_n, \quad (1.5)$$

where  $v$  is the first regeneration point of the random permutation  $\sigma$ . Since  $P_n(1) + \dots + P_n(n) = 1$ , we have

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (n-k)! c_k/n! = 1, \quad n \geq 1. \quad (1.6)$$

The  $c_n$  can be computed recursively from (1.6). We find

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 &= c_2 = 1, \quad c_3 = 3, \quad c_4 = 13, \quad c_5 = 71, \\ c_6 &= 461, \quad c_7 = 3447 = g \times 383. \end{aligned} \quad (1.7)$$

## REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

From (1.6) we see, by induction on  $n$ , that the  $c_n$  are odd. Divisibility of the  $c_n$  is considered in Section 4. By (1.4), the principle of inclusion and exclusion, and by (1.2),

$$c_n/n! = 1 - P(A_1 \cup \dots \cup A_{n-1}) = 1 + \sum_{h=1}^{n-1} (-1)^h T_h = \sum_{h=0}^{n-1} (-1)^h T_h. \quad (1.8)$$

Here  $T_0 = 1$  and for  $h > 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} T_h &= \sum' P_n(A_{i_1} A_{i_2} \dots A_{i_h}) = \sum' i_1! (i_2 - i_1)! \dots (i_h - i_{h-1})! (n - i_h)! / n! \\ &= \sum'' j_1! j_2! \dots j_{h+1}! / n!, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\sum'$  sums over all  $i_1, \dots, i_h$  with  $1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_h \leq n-1$  and  $\sum''$  over all  $j_1 \geq 1, \dots, j_{h+1} \geq 1$  with  $j_1 + \dots + j_{h+1} = n$ . In (1.8) this gives, by putting  $h = m-1$ .

$$c_n = \sum_{m=1}^n (-1)^{m-1} \sum^* j_1! \dots j_m!, \quad n \geq 1. \quad (1.9)$$

where  $\sum^*$  sums over all  $j_1 \geq 1, \dots, j_m \geq 1$  with  $j_1 + \dots + j_m = n$ .

In Section 2, an integral equation for the exponential generating function of the  $c_n$  will be derived. Section 3 studies the asymptotic behavior of  $c_n$  for  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . We have  $c_n/n! \rightarrow 1$ , so  $M$  tends to 1 in probability as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . In Section 5, some applications of the  $c_n$  in combinatorial probability theory are given.

### 2. GENERAL FORMULAS

For the total number  $M$  of regeneration points we find, by specifying regeneration points only at  $j_1, j_1 + j_2, \dots, j_1 + \dots + j_m = n$ ,

$$P_n(M = m) = \sum^* c(j_1) c(j_2) \dots c(j_m) / n!, \quad m \in \mathbb{N}_n, \quad (2.1)$$

where  $\sum^*$  is the same as in (1.9). The event  $\{M \geq m\}$ , with  $m \geq 2$ , means that there are at least  $m-1$  regeneration points in  $\{1, \dots, n-1\}$ . This gives, in the same way as (2.1),

$$\begin{aligned} P_n(M \geq m) &= \sum' c(j_1) \dots c(j_{m-1}) (n - j_1 - \dots - j_{m-1})! / n! \\ &= \sum^* c(j_1) \dots c(j_{m-1}) j_m! / n!, \quad m = 2, \dots, n, \end{aligned} \quad (2.2)$$

where  $\sum'$  sums over all  $j_1 \geq 1, \dots, j_{m-1} \geq 1$  with  $j_1 + \dots + j_{m-1} \leq n-1$  and  $\sum^*$  is the same as in (1.9).

For the first regeneration point  $v$  we have, with (1.5),

$$\begin{aligned} E_n v &= \sum_{k=1}^n k c_k (n-k)! / n! = \sum_{k=1}^n (n+1) P_n(k) - \sum_{k=1}^n c_k (n+1-k)! / n! \\ &= (n+1) - (n+1) \sum_{k=1}^n P_{n+1}(k) = (n+1) P_{n+1}(n+1) = c_{n+1} / n!. \end{aligned} \quad (2.3)$$

From the relation  $k^2 = (n+2-k)(n+1-k) + (2n+3)k - (n+2)(n+1)$ , we find, in a similar way,

$$E_n v^2 = \{2(n+1)c_{n+1} - c_{n+2}\} / n!. \quad (2.4)$$



# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

Let

$$C(z) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} z^k c_k / k!, \quad |z| < 1. \quad (2.5)$$

From (1.6),

$$\begin{aligned} z(1-z)^{-1} &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z^n \sum_{k=1}^n c_k (n-k)! / n! = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} z^n (n-k)! / n! \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} z^{k+j} j! / (k+j)!. \end{aligned}$$

With the relation

$$\int_0^z (z-x)^{k-1} (1-x)^{-1} dx = (k-1)! \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} z^{k+j} j! / (k+j)!,$$

to be derived by putting  $x = zt$  and expanding  $(1-zt)^{-1}$ , we see that

$$z(1-z)^{-1} = \int_0^z C'(z-x) (1-x)^{-1} dx,$$

and with partial integration, noting that  $C(0) = 0$ ,

$$z(1-z)^{-1} = C(z) + \int_0^z (1-x)^{-2} C(z-x) dx, \quad |z| < 1. \quad (2.6)$$

The author was unable to find a solution of (2.6) in closed form. The Neumann series solution gives a series of iterated convolutions which, on expansion into powers of  $z$ , leads back to (1.9).

## 3. ASYMPTOTIC BEHAVIOR

We use the notation for falling factorials

$$(n)_r = n! / (n-r)!, \quad r = 0, \dots, n, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \quad (3.1)$$

First we consider  $Q_n = E_n M - 1$  given by (1.3). Rockett [4] gave an expression for

$$\sum \binom{n}{k}^{-1},$$

but direct use of (1.3) seems better for asymptotic estimates. We have

$$Q_n = 2n^{-1} + 4(n)_2^{-1} + V(n)_3^{-1}, \quad n \geq 6, \quad (3.2)$$

$$V_n = \sum_{k=3}^{n-3} k!(n-k)! / (n-3)!, \quad n \geq 6. \quad (3.3)$$

Theorem 1. We have

$$V_n \geq 12, \quad n \geq 7; \quad V_n \leq 156/7, \quad n \geq 6; \quad (3.4)$$

$$V_n = 12 + O(n^{-1}), \quad n \rightarrow \infty; \quad (3.5)$$

$$V_{n+1} < V_n, \quad n \geq 11. \quad (3.6)$$

Proof: The first inequality in (3.4) follows by considering the terms with  $k = 3$  and  $k = n-3$  in (3.3). The relation (3.5) follows by estimating the

# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

terms in (3.3) with  $k = 4$ ,  $k = n - 4$ , and  $5 \leq k \leq n - 5$ . From (3.3), for  $n \geq 6$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} V_{n+1} - V_n &= 6 + \sum_{k=3}^{n-3} k!(n-k)! \{(n+1-k)(n-2)^{-1} - 1\} / (n-3)! \\ &= 6 + 4(n-2)^{-1}V_n - \sum_{k=3}^{n-3} (k+1)!(n-k)! / (n-2)! \\ &= 6 + 4(n-2)^{-1}V_n - \sum_{h=4}^{n-2} h!(n+1-h)! / (n-2)! \\ &= 12 + 4(n-2)^{-1}V_n - V_{n+1}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

so that  $2V_{n+1} = 12 + (n+2)(n-2)^{-1}V_n$ . Substituting this into (3.7) shows that  $V_{n+1} < V_n$ , for  $n \geq 6$ , if and only if

$$V_n > 12 + 48(n-6)^{-1}. \quad (3.8)$$

From the terms in (3.3) with  $k \leq 5$  and  $k \geq n - 5$ ,

$$V_n \geq 12 + 48(n-3)^{-1} + 240(n-3)^{-1}(n-4)^{-1}, \quad n \geq 11.$$

Applying this to (3.8) we find (3.6). From (3.6) and direct computation of  $V_n$ ,  $n = 6, \dots, 11$ , we see that  $\max V_n = 156/7$  is reached for  $n = 11$ . Better bounds for larger  $n$  may be obtained from (3.6) by computing some  $V_n$ .

For the study of  $c_n$ , we introduce the following notation, see (1.5) and (3.1):

$$H_n = 1 - c_n/n! = P_n(v \leq n-1) = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} c_k(n-k)!/n!; \quad (3.9)$$

$$D_n = (n)_3 \{H_n - 2n^{-1} - (n)_2^{-1}\}, \quad n \geq 3. \quad (3.10)$$

We need some numerical values of  $nH_n$  and  $D_n$ . By means of (1.6), (3.9), and (3.10), the values of  $nH_n$  and  $D_n$  for  $3 \leq n \leq 200$  were computed for the author at the University of Groningen Computing Centre. Part of the values are given in Tables 1 and 2, but the most important numerical result is

$$D_{n+1} < D_n, \quad n = 13, \dots, 199. \quad (3.11)$$

Table 1

| $n$ | $nH_n$   | $n$ | $nH_n$   | $n$ | $nH_n$   |
|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|
| 1   | 0.000000 | 4   | 1.833333 | 7   | 2.212500 |
| 2   | 1.000000 | 5   | 2.041667 | 8   | 2.227579 |
| 3   | 1.500000 | 6   | 2.158333 | 9   | 2.220660 |

**Theorem 2.** With  $D_n$  defined by (3.9) and (3.10),

$$D_n > 4, \quad n \geq 9; \quad D_n < 6, \quad n \geq 20. \quad (3.12)$$

**Proof:** Since  $c_k \leq k!$ , we see from (3.9), (1.1), (1.3), (3.2), and (3.4) that  $nH_n \leq nQ_n < 3$ ,  $n \geq 9$ .

# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

With Table 1, we then extend this to

$$nH_n < 3, \quad n \geq 1. \quad (3.13)$$

From (3.9), for  $n \geq 7$ ,

$$n!H_n \geq (n-1)!c_1 + (n-2)!c_2 + (n-3)!c_3 + 6c(n-3) + 2c(n-2) + c(n-1) \quad (3.14)$$

With (1.7) and (3.13), writing  $c_k = k!(1 - H_k)$  for  $k \geq n-3$ , this gives

$$H_n > 2n^{-1} + 3(n)_3^{-1} - 18(n)_4^{-1}, \quad n \geq 7. \quad (3.15)$$

From (3.15) we see that  $nH_n > 2$ ,  $n > 9$ , and then from Table 1,

$$nH_n > 2, \quad n \geq 5. \quad (3.16)$$

From (3.9) for  $n \geq 9$ , with  $c_k \leq k!$ ,

$$n!H_n \leq \left( \sum_{k=1}^4 + \sum_{k=n-4}^{n-1} \right) c_k (n-k)! + (n-9)5!(n-5)!. \quad (3.17)$$

With (1.7) and (3.16), writing  $c_k = k!(1 - H_k)$  for  $k \geq n-4$ , we find

$$H_n \leq 2n^{-1} + (n)_2^{-1} + h(n)(n)_3^{-1}, \quad n \geq 9; \quad (3.18)$$

$$h(n) = 5 + 25(n-3)^{-1} + (120(n-9) - 48)(n-3)^{-1}(n-4)^{-1}. \quad (3.19)$$

Table 2

| $n$ | $D_n$     | $n$ | $D_n$    | $n$ | $D_n$    |
|-----|-----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|
| 3   | -2.000000 | 10  | 6.625992 | 17  | 6.687779 |
| 4   | -3.000000 | 11  | 7.376414 | 18  | 6.406247 |
| 5   | -2.500000 | 12  | 7.702940 | 19  | 6.156020 |
| 6   | -0.833333 | 13  | 7.726892 | 20  | 5.939237 |
| 7   | 1.375000  | 14  | 7.561317 | 21  | 5.754089 |
| 8   | 3.558333  | 15  | 7.295355 | 21  | 5.596962 |
| 9   | 5.356944  | 16  | 6.991231 | 23  | 5.463713 |

By elementary computation we see that  $h(n+1) < h(n)$  for  $145n > 1876$  or  $n \geq 13$  and  $h(196) < 6$ , so that  $h(n) < 6$ ,  $n \geq 196$ . Hence,  $D_n < 6$ ,  $n \geq 196$ , by (3.10). The second inequality in (3.12) then follows from (3.11) and Table 2, and it shows that

$$H_n < 2n^{-1} + 2(n)_2^{-1}, \quad n \geq 20. \quad (3.20)$$

From (3.9), for  $n \geq 9$ ,

$$n!H_n \geq \left( \sum_{k=1}^4 + \sum_{k=n-4}^{n-1} \right) c_k (n-k)!.$$

Here we apply (1.7) for  $k \leq 4$  and write  $c_k = k!(1 - H_k)$  for  $k \geq n-4$ . Application of (3.20) for  $k = n-3$ ,  $n-4$ , and of (3.10) with  $D_n < 6$  then gives

$$H_n > 2n^{-1} + (n)_2^{-1} + 4(n)_3^{-1} + g(n)(n)_4^{-1}, \quad n \geq 24; \quad (3.21)$$

# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

$$g(n) = 17 - 72(n-4)^{-1} - 48(n-4)^{-1}(n-5)^{-1}. \quad (3.22)$$

Since  $g(n+1) > g(n)$ ,  $n \geq 6$ , and  $g(13) > 0$ ,

$$H_n > 2n^{-1} + (n)_2^{-1} + 4(n)_3^{-1}, \quad n \geq 24,$$

i.e.,  $D_n > 4$ ,  $n \geq 24$ . The first inequality in (3.12) then follows from Table 2.

**Remark 1.** By taking into account more terms in (3.9), it was proved in Stam [5] that  $D_n = 4 + O(n^{-1})$  and  $D_{n+1} < D_n$ ,  $n \geq 13$ .

**Remark 2.** For the conditional probability  $P(A_1 | M \geq 2)$ , we see, using (1.1), (3.10), and (3.12), that

$$P(A_1 | M \geq 2) = P(A_1) / P(M \geq 2) = n^{-1} H_n^{-1} \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}, \quad n \rightarrow \infty,$$

and in the same way,

$$P(A_{n-1} | M \geq 2) \rightarrow \frac{1}{2},$$

so that the regeneration points concentrate near the end points of  $\mathbb{N}_n$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

## 4. DIVISIBILITY

From (1.6) we have, since  $m$  divides  $h!$  if  $h \geq m$ , the congruences

$$\sum_{j=0}^{m-1} j! c_{n-j} \equiv 0 \pmod{m}, \quad n \geq m. \quad (4.1)$$

Let  $d_n = d_n(m)$  be the remainder of  $c_n$  on division by  $m$ . Then the recurrence (4.1) also holds for the  $d_i$  and determines them completely if  $d_1, \dots, d_{m-1}$  are given. Since  $d_n \in \{0, \dots, m-1\}$ , there are at most  $m^{m-1}$  possibilities for the sequence  $u_k = (d_k, \dots, d_{k+m-2})$ . One of them is  $u_k = (0, \dots, 0)$  and this would give  $d_n = 0$ ,  $n \geq 1$ , which is excluded because  $c_1 = 1$ . So we must have  $u_k = u_{k+p}$  for some  $k$  and some minimal  $p \leq m^{m-1} - 1$ . Since any  $u_k$  determines all  $d_n$ ,  $n \geq 1$ , with (4.1) and the coefficients in (4.1) do not depend on  $n$ , it follows that the sequence  $d_n$ ,  $n \geq 1$  is periodic with period  $p$ .

If  $m = 3$ , then (4.1) becomes

$$c_n + c_{n-1} + 2c_{n-2} \equiv 0 \quad \text{or} \quad c_n + c_{n-1} - c_{n-2} \equiv 0, \pmod{3}, \quad n \geq 3,$$

so that  $(-1)^n c_n$  satisfies the same recurrence mod 3 as the Fibonacci numbers, but the initial conditions are different. We find

$$c_n \equiv 1, 1, 0, 1, 2, 2, 0, 2, 1, 1, \pmod{3}, \quad n = 1, \dots, 10.$$

So  $p$  has its maximal value 8.

If  $m = 4$ , then (4.1) gives

$$c_n + c_{n-1} + 2c_{n-2} + 6c_{n-3} \equiv c_n + c_{n-1} + 2c_{n-2} + 2c_{n-3} \equiv 0, \pmod{4}, \quad n \geq 4.$$

Since the  $c_i$  are odd, this gives

$$c_n + c_{n-1} \equiv 0, \pmod{4}, \quad n \geq 4.$$

With (1.7) we see that  $c_n \equiv 1, \pmod{4}$ , if  $n$  is even and  $c_n \equiv 3, \pmod{4}$ , if  $n \geq 3$  is odd.

Since the  $c_n$  are odd, we have  $c_n \equiv 1, c_n \equiv 3, c_n \equiv 5, \pmod{6}$ , if  $c_n \equiv 1, c_n \equiv 0, c_n \equiv 2, \pmod{3}$ , respectively.

## REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

The Computing Centre of the University of Groningen computed the sequences for  $m = 5$ ,  $m = 7$ , and part of the sequence for  $m = 11$ . For  $m = 5$  the period is 62, whereas  $5^4 - 1 = 624$ . For  $m = 7$  the period is 684, whereas  $7^6 - 1 = 117649$ . For  $m = 5, 7$ , and 11 all possible values of  $c_n \pmod{m}$  occur. It is conjectured that this holds for all prime  $m$ .

We note that for  $m$  prime the last two coefficients in (4.1) are 1 and  $-1 \pmod{m}$  by Wilson's theorem (see Grosswald [2, Ch. 4.3]).

### 5. APPLICATIONS IN COMBINATORIAL PROBABILITY THEORY

If  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  are independent stochastic elements of  $S_n$  and one of them has uniform distribution  $P_n$ , then the points  $k \in \mathbb{N}_n$  such that  $\sigma(\mathbb{N}_k) = \tau(\mathbb{N}_k)$  have the same joint distribution as the regeneration points of a random permutation, since  $\sigma(\mathbb{N}_k) = \tau(\mathbb{N}_k)$  if and only if  $\sigma^{-1}\tau(\mathbb{N}_k) = \mathbb{N}_k$  and  $\sigma^{-1}\tau$  has probability distribution  $P_n$ .

Let  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  be independent random variables with common continuous distribution function and  $Y_1, \dots, Y_n$  their increasing order statistics, i.e., the value of  $Y_k$  is the  $k^{\text{th}}$  smallest of the values of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ . Then the stochastic points  $k$  in  $\mathbb{N}_n$  such that  $X_1 + \dots + X_k = Y_1 + \dots + Y_k$  have the same joint probability distribution as the regeneration points of a random permutation of  $\mathbb{N}_n$ . We have  $Y_1 < Y_2 < \dots < Y_n$  with probability 1 and the conditional distribution of  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  given  $Y_i = y_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n$  is the same as the distribution of  $\sigma(y_1), \dots, \sigma(y_n)$ , where  $\sigma$  is a random element of  $S_n$  (see Rényi [3]). Furthermore,  $\sigma(y_1) + \dots + \sigma(y_k) = y_1 + \dots + y_k$  if and only if

$$\sigma(\{y_1, \dots, y_k\}) = \{y_1, \dots, y_k\}.$$

A deeper application is the following. Let  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  be independent random elements of  $S_n$ . Dixon [1] defined  $t_n$  as the probability that the subgroup  $\langle \tau, \sigma \rangle$  of  $S_n$  generated by  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  is transitive, i.e., has  $\mathbb{N}_n$  as the only orbit. This occurs if and only if  $\sigma(A) = \tau(A) = A$  for no proper subset  $A$  of  $\mathbb{N}_n$ . Using formal power series, Dixon [1] proved that

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (n-k)! k! k t_k = n! n, \quad n \geq 1. \quad (5.1)$$

A slightly shorter proof starts from  $U_1$ , the orbit of  $\langle \sigma, \tau \rangle$  that contains 1. By the definition of  $t_k$ , we have

$$P(U_1 = A) = (k!)^2 t_k ((n-k)!)^2 / (n!)^2,$$

if  $A \subset \mathbb{N}_n$ ,  $1 \in A$ , and  $|A| = k$ . So

$$P(|U_1| = k) = \binom{n-1}{k-1} P(U_1 = A) = (n-k)! k! k t_k (n!)^{-1}.$$

Equation (5.1) states that these probabilities sum to 1. From (1.6) and (1.7),

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (n-k)! c_{k+1} = \sum_{j=2}^{n+1} (n+1-j)! c_j = (n+1)! - n! c_1 = n! n, \quad n \geq 1.$$

Comparing this with (5.1) we see that the sequences  $c_{n+1}$  and  $n! n t_n$ ,  $n \geq 1$ , are determined (uniquely) by the same recurrence. So

$$n! n t_n = c_{n+1}, \quad n \geq 1.$$

The author was unable to find a direct combinatorial proof of this result.

# REGENERATION POINTS IN RANDOM PERMUTATIONS

Let  $X = (X_1, \dots, X_n)$  be a random sample with replacement from  $\mathbb{N}_m$ , or a random function  $\mathbb{N}_n \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_m$ . If  $X(\mathbb{N}_k) = \mathbb{N}_k$ , then  $X_1, \dots, X_k$  defines a bijection  $\mathbb{N}_k \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_k$ . So the probability that  $h$  is the first  $k$  with  $X(\mathbb{N}_k) = \mathbb{N}_k$  is

$$c_h m^{n-h} m^{-n} = c_h m^{-h}$$

and the probability that there is at least one such  $k$  is

$$\sum_{h=1}^{m \wedge n} m^{-h} c_h.$$

When the sample is drawn without replacement, so that  $n \leq m$ , the corresponding probability is

$$\sum_{h=1}^n c_h (m-h)!/m!.$$

## REFERENCES

1. J. D. Dixon. "The Probability of Generating the Symmetric Group." *Math. Zeitschr.* 110 (1969):199-205.
2. E. Grosswald. *Topics from the Theory of Numbers*. New York: Macmillan, 1966.
3. A. Rényi. "Théorie des éléments saillants d'une suite d'observations." In *Colloquium on Combinatorial Methods in Probability Theory*. Matematisk Institut Aarhus Universitetet Danmark, 1962.
4. A. M. Rockett. "Sums of the Inverses of Binomial Coefficients." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 5 (1981):433-37.
5. A. J. Stam. "Asymptotics for Regeneration Points of Random Permutations." Report T.W. 242, Mathematisch Instituut Rijksuniversiteit Groningen.

◆◆◆◆

# ON LUCAS FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS AND CHEBYCHEV POLYNOMIAL SEQUENCES

S. PETHE

*University of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia*  
(Submitted June 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Let  $\{U_n(p, q)\}$  be the sequence of fundamental functions defined by Lucas [2] as follows:

$$U_{n+2} = pU_{n+1} - qU_n \quad (n \geq 0)$$

with initial values  $U_0 = 0, U_1 = 1$ . Further, let  $\{S_n(x)\}$  and  $\{T_n(x)\}$  denote the Chebychev polynomial sequences of the first and second kind, respectively. In [5], formulas were obtained for

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n U_{3n+j}}{(3n+j)!}, \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{3n+j}(x)}{(3n+j)!}, \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n T_{3n+j}(x)}{(3n+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, 2.$$

As mentioned in [5, Remark 4], we generalize the above formulas in this paper to obtain

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n U_{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, p-1,$$

and similar formulas for  $\{S_n(x)\}$  and  $\{T_n(x)\}$ .

## 2. PRELIMINARIES

The generalized circular functions are defined as follows. For any positive integer  $r$ ,

$$M_{r,j}(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{rn+j}}{(rn+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1,$$

and

$$N_{r,j}(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^{rn+j}}{(rn+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1.$$

Note that  $M_{1,0}(t) = e^{-t}$ ,  $M_{2,0}(t) = \cos t$ ,  $M_{2,1}(t) = \sin t$ , and  $N_{1,0}(t) = e^t$ ,  $N_{2,0}(t) = \cosh t$ ,  $N_{2,1}(t) = \sinh t$ .

The notation and some of the results presented here are found in Pethe and Sharma [4].

Following Barakat [1] and Walton [7], we define generalized trigonometric and hyperbolic functions of any square matrix  $X$  by

$$M_{r,j}(X) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n X^{rn+j}}{(rn+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1,$$

and

$$N_{r,j}(X) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{X^{rn+j}}{(rn+j)!}, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1.$$

**Lemma 1.** Let  $X$  be a  $2 \times 2$  matrix given by

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let  $\text{tr } X = p$  and  $\det X = q$ . Then, for any integer  $n$ ,

$$X^n = U_n X - q U_{n-1} I,$$

where  $U_n$  is the  $n^{\text{th}}$  fundamental function and  $I$  the unit matrix of order 2.

This is proved in [1].

**Lemma 2.** We have, for a positive integer  $r$  and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ ,

$$M_{r,j}(x+y) = \sum_{k=0}^j M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,j-k}(y) - \sum_{k=j+1}^{r-1} M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,r+j-k}(y).$$

This is proved in [3].

**Lemma 3.** Let  $r$  be a positive integer, and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ . Then:

a. For even  $r$ ,

$$M_{r,j}(x) + M_{r,j}(-x) = \begin{cases} 2M_{r,j}(x), & j \text{ even} \\ 0, & j \text{ odd,} \end{cases} \quad (2.1)$$

and

$$M_{r,j}(x) - M_{r,j}(-x) = \begin{cases} 0, & j \text{ even} \\ 2M_{r,j}(x), & j \text{ odd.} \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

b. For odd  $r$ ,

$$M_{r,j}(x) + M_{r,j}(-x) = \begin{cases} 2N_{2r,j}(x), & j \text{ even} \\ -2N_{2r,r+j}(x), & j \text{ odd,} \end{cases} \quad (2.3)$$

and

$$M_{r,j}(x) - M_{r,j}(-x) = \begin{cases} -2N_{2r,r+j}(x), & j \text{ even} \\ 2N_{2r,j}(x), & j \text{ odd.} \end{cases} \quad (2.4)$$

**Proof:** We prove (2.1) and (2.4). The proofs of (2.2) and (2.3) are similar.

Let  $r$  be even. Now,

$$M_{r,j}(x) + M_{r,j}(-x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} (1 + (-1)^{nr+j}). \quad (2.5)$$

Since  $r$  is even,  $(-1)^{nr+j} = (-1)^j$ . Hence (2.5) becomes

$$M_{r,j}(x) + M_{r,j}(-x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} (1 + (-1)^j) = \begin{cases} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!}, & j \text{ even} \\ 0, & j \text{ odd,} \end{cases}$$

(continued)



$$= \begin{cases} 2M_{r,j}(x), & j \text{ even} \\ 0, & j \text{ odd}, \end{cases}$$

which proves (2.1).

Now, let  $r$  be odd. Then

$$M_{r,j}(x) - M_{r,j}(-x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} (1 - (-1)^{nr+j}). \quad (2.6)$$

Since  $r$  is odd,  $(-1)^{nr+j} = (-1)^{n(r-1)+n+j} = (-1)^{n+j}$ ; therefore, (2.6) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(x) - M_{r,j}(-x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} (1 - (-1)^{n+j}) \\ &= \begin{cases} \sum_{n=1,3,\dots}^{\infty} \frac{2(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!}, & j \text{ even} \\ \sum_{n=0,2,\dots}^{\infty} \frac{2(-1)^n x^{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!}, & j \text{ odd}, \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} -2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2nr+r+j}}{(2nr+r+j)!}, & j \text{ even} \\ 2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2nr+j}}{(2nr+j)!}, & j \text{ odd}, \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} -2N_{2r,r+j}(x), & j \text{ even} \\ 2N_{2r,j}(x), & j \text{ odd}, \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

which proves (2.4).

Lemma 4. We have for  $j = 0, 1, \dots, 2r-1$  and  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ ,

$$\text{a. } M_{2r,j}(ix) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{j/2} M_{2r,j}(x), & r \text{ even} \\ (-1)^{j/2} N_{2r,j}(x), & r \text{ odd}, \end{cases} \quad (2.7)$$

$$\text{b. } N_{2r,j}(ix) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{j/2} N_{2r,j}(x), & r \text{ even} \\ (-1)^{j/2} M_{2r,j}(x), & r \text{ odd}. \end{cases} \quad (2.8)$$

Proof: By definition,

$$M_{2r,j}(ix) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n i^{2nr+j} x^{2nr+j}}{(2nr+j)!}. \quad (2.9)$$

Now

$$(i)^{2nr+j} = \begin{cases} (i^4)^{nr/2} (i)^j, & r \text{ even} \\ (i^4)^{\frac{1}{2}n(r-1)} (i)^{2n} (i)^j, & r \text{ odd}, \end{cases}$$

so that

$$(i)^{2nr+j} = \begin{cases} (-1)^{j/2}, & r \text{ even} \\ (-1)^{n+j/2}, & r \text{ odd.} \end{cases} \quad (2.10)$$

Using (2.10) in (2.9), we obtain

$$M_{2r,j}(ix) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{j/2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2nr+j}}{(2nr+j)!}, & r \text{ even} \\ (-1)^{j/2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{2n} x^{2nr+j}}{(2nr+j)!}, & r \text{ odd,} \end{cases}$$

which proves (2.7). We can prove (2.8) in a similar manner.

### 3. SUMMATION FORMULAS FOR LUCAS FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

We shall now prove

**Theorem 1.** a. For even  $r$  and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ ,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n U_{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} = \frac{2}{\delta} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} M_{r,2k+m}(p/2) M_{r,\alpha}(\delta/2) - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} M_{r,2k+m}(p/2) M_{r,r+\alpha}(\delta/2) \right] \quad (3.1)$$

b. For odd  $r$  and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ ,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n U_{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} = \frac{2}{\delta} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} M_{r,2k+m}(p/2) N_{2r,\alpha}(\delta/2) - \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-3)+m} M_{r,2k+1-m}(p/2) N_{2r,r+\beta-1}(\delta/2) + \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(p-1)-m} M_{r,2k+m}(p/2) N_{2r,2r+\alpha}(\delta/2) \right] \quad (3.2)$$

where, in both (a) and (b) above and in Theorems 2 and 3 below,

$$\alpha = j - 2k - m, \quad \beta = j - 2k + m, \quad \text{and} \quad m = \begin{cases} 1, & j \text{ even} \\ 0, & j \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

Further,  $[S]$  = the greatest integer  $\leq S$  and  $\delta$  as defined below.

**Proof:** By Sylvester's matrix interpolation formula (see [6]), we have

$$M_{r,j}(X) = \frac{1}{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2} \{ [M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - M_{r,j}(\lambda_2)] X - [\lambda_1 M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - \lambda_2 M_{r,j}(\lambda_2)] I \}, \quad (3.3)$$

where  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  are distinct eigenvalues of  $X$  as defined in Lemma 1. It is easy

to see that  $\lambda_1 = (p + \delta)/2$ ,  $\lambda_2 = (p - \delta)/2$ , where  $\delta = \sqrt{p^2 - 4q}$ . Now

$$M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - M_{r,j}(\lambda_2) = M_{r,j}\left(\frac{p + \delta}{2}\right) - M_{r,j}\left(\frac{p - \delta}{2}\right). \quad (3.4)$$

Using Lemma 2, (3.4) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - M_{r,j}(\lambda_2) &= \sum_{k=0}^j M_{r,k}(p/2) [M_{r,j-k}(\delta/2) - M_{r,j-k}(-\delta/2)] \\ &\quad - \sum_{k=j+1}^{r-1} M_{r,k}(p/2) (M_{r,r+j-k}(\delta/2) - M_{r,r+j-k}(-\delta/2)). \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

Let  $r$  and  $j$  both be even. Breaking the summation on the right side of (3.5) into even and odd values of  $k$  and then using (2.2), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - M_{r,j}(\lambda_2) &= 2 \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} M_{r,k}(p/2) M_{r,j-k}(\delta/2) \\ &\quad - 2 \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} M_{r,k}(p/2) M_{r,r+j-k}(\delta/2). \end{aligned}$$

Changing  $k$  to  $2k + 1$ , because  $k$  takes only odd values, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(\lambda_1) - M_{r,j}(\lambda_2) &= 2 \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2}(j-2)} M_{r,2k+1}(p/2) M_{r,j-2k-1}(\delta/2) \\ &\quad - 2 \sum_{k=\frac{j}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} M_{r,2k+1}(p/2) M_{r,r+j-2k-1}(\delta/2). \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

Now, by definition of  $M_{r,j}(X)$  and Lemma 1, we have

$$M_{r,j}(X) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(nr + j)!} [U_{nr+j}X - qU_{nr+j-1}I]. \quad (3.7)$$

Equating the coefficients of  $X$  in (3.7) and (3.3) and then making use of (3.6), we get (3.1) for even  $j$ . For odd  $j$ , (3.1) and (3.2) are similarly proved.

#### 4. SUMMATION FORMULAS FOR $S_n(x)$

For Chebychev polynomials  $S_n(x)$  of the first kind, we prove the following theorem. Let  $x = \cos \theta$  and  $y = \sin \theta$ .

**Theorem 2.** a. Let  $r$  be such that  $r/2$  is even, and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r - 1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr + j)!} &= \frac{1}{y} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha-1)} M_{r,2k+m}(x) M_{r,\alpha}(y) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\alpha-1)} M_{r,2k+m}(x) M_{r,r+\alpha}(y) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

b. Let  $r$  be such that  $r/2$  is odd, and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r - 1$ . Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \frac{1}{y} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(x) N_{r, \alpha}(y) \right. \\ \left. - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(x) N_{r, r+\alpha}(y) \right\}.$$

c. Let  $r$  be odd,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ . Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \frac{1}{y} \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-3)+m} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\beta)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) M_{2r, r+\beta-1}(y) \right. \\ + \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(x) M_{2r, \alpha}(y) \\ \left. + \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-1)-m} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(2r+\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(x) M_{2r, 2r+\alpha}(y) \right\}.$$

Proof: If we write  $x = \cos \theta$  and let  $p = 2x$  and  $q = 1$ , then  $U_n(p, q)$  are the Chebychev polynomials of the first kind, i.e.,

$$U_n(2x, 1) = S_n(x) = \frac{\sin n\theta}{\sin \theta} \quad (n \geq 0),$$

where

$$S_{n+2} = 2xS_{n+1} - S_n, \text{ with } S_0 = 0 \text{ and } S_1 = 1.$$

We shall prove (a) and (b). Now

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n U_{nr+j}}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \sin(nr+j)\theta}{(nr+j)! \sin \theta} \\ = \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(nr+j)!} \left[ \frac{e^{i(nr+j)\theta} - e^{-i(nr+j)\theta}}{2i} \right] \\ = \frac{1}{2i \sin \theta} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(nr+j)!} [(e^{i\theta})^{nr+j} - (e^{-i\theta})^{nr+j}] \\ = \frac{1}{2i \sin \theta} [M_{r,j}(e^{i\theta}) - M_{r,j}(e^{-i\theta})].$$

Hence,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \frac{1}{2iy} [M_{r,j}(x+iy) - M_{r,j}(x-iy)]. \quad (4.1)$$

Now, by Lemma 2,

$$M_{r,j}(x+iy) - M_{r,j}(x-iy) = \sum_{k=0}^j M_{r,k}(x) [M_{r,j-k}(iy) - M_{r,j-k}(-iy)] \\ - \sum_{k=j+1}^{r-1} M_{r,k}(x) [M_{r,r+j-k}(iy) - M_{r,r+j-k}(-iy)]. \quad (4.2)$$

First, let  $j$  be even. Breaking up the right-hand side of (4.2) into summations over even and odd values of  $k$  and making use of (2.2), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(x+iy) - M_{r,j}(x-iy) &= \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} 2M_{r,k}(x)M_{r,j-k}(iy) \\ &\quad - \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} 2M_{r,k}(x)M_{r,r+j-k}(iy). \end{aligned} \quad (4.3)$$

Now, since  $r$  is even,  $r/2$  is an integer that is either even or odd. First, let  $r/2$  be *even*. By (2.7), (4.3) then becomes

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(x+iy) - M_{r,j}(x-iy) &= 2 \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} (i)^{j-k} M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,j-k}(y) \\ &\quad - 2 \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} (i)^{r+j-k} M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,r+j-k}(y). \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$

If  $r/2$  is *odd*, then again making use of (2.7), (4.3) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} M_{r,j}(x+iy) - M_{r,j}(x-iy) &= 2 \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} (i)^{j-k} M_{r,k}(x) N_{r,j-k}(y) \\ &\quad - 2 \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} (i)^{r+j-k} M_{r,k}(x) N_{r,r+j-k}(y). \end{aligned} \quad (4.5)$$

Note that the power of  $i$  in all the summations in (4.4) and (4.5) is odd, so that when we substitute (4.4) and (4.5) in (4.1) and cancel  $i$  from the numerator and denominator, the remaining power of  $i$  will be an even integer. Then (4.1) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} &= \frac{1}{y} \left[ \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(j-k-1)} M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,j-k}(y) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+j-k-1)} M_{r,k}(x) M_{r,r+j-k}(y) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

when  $r/2$  is *even*, and

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n S_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} &= \frac{1}{y} \left[ \sum_{k=1,3,\dots}^{j-1} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(j-k-1)} M_{r,k}(x) N_{r,j-k}(y) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \sum_{k=j+1,j+3,\dots}^{r-1} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+j-k-1)} M_{r,k}(x) N_{r,r+j-k}(y) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

when  $r/2$  is *odd*.

Replacing  $k$  by  $2k+1$  in the right-hand side of (4.6) and (4.7), we finally get (a) and (b) for even  $j$ . By adopting similar techniques, we get (a) and (b) for odd  $j$  and (c).

5. SUMMATION FORMULAS FOR  $T_n(x)$ 

**Theorem 3.** For the Chebychev polynomials  $T_n(x)$  of the second kind, the following summation formulas hold.

a. Let  $r$  be such that  $r/2$  is even and  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ . Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n T_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{k=0}^{[j/2]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) M_{r, \beta-1}(y) \\ - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+2)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) M_{r, r+\beta-1}(y).$$

b. Let  $r$  be such that  $r/2$  is odd,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ . Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n T_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{k=0}^{[j/2]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) N_{r, \beta-1}(y) \\ - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+2)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) N_{r, r+\beta-1}(y).$$

c. Let  $r$  be odd,  $j = 0, 1, \dots, r-1$ . Then

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n T_{nr+j}(x)}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{k=0}^{[j/2]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) M_{2r, \beta-1}(y) \\ - \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-1)-m} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\alpha)} M_{r, 2k+m}(x) M_{2r, r+\alpha}(y) \\ + \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+2)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-3)+m} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(2r+\beta-1)} M_{r, 2k+1-m}(x) M_{2r, 2r+\beta-1}(y).$$

**Proof:** The proof follows the same technique as in Theorem 2 and is therefore omitted. Notice that the power of  $(-1)$  in each of the above summations is an integer.

**Remark.** Since

$$S_n(x) = \frac{\sin n\theta}{\sin \theta} \quad \text{and} \quad T_n(x) = \cos n\theta,$$

summation formulas in Theorems 2 and 3 also give those for

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \sin(nr+j)\theta}{(nr+j)!} \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \cos(nr+j)\theta}{(nr+j)!}.$$

For example, formula (a) in Theorem 2 can be expressed as

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \sin(nr+j)\theta}{(nr+j)!} = \sum_{k=0}^{[\frac{1}{2}(j-1)]} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(\cos \theta) M_{r, \alpha}(\sin \theta) \\ - \sum_{k=[\frac{1}{2}(j+1)]}^{\frac{1}{2}(r-2)} (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}(r+\alpha-1)} M_{r, 2k+m}(\cos \theta) M_{r, r+\alpha}(\sin \theta).$$

REFERENCES

1. R. Barakat. "The Matrix Operator  $e^{\bar{X}}$  and the Lucas Polynomials." *J. Math. Phys.* 43 (1964):332-35.
2. E. Lucas. *Théorie des nombres*. Paris: Albert Blanchard, 1961.
3. J. G. Mikusinski. "Sur les fonctions  $k_n(x) = \sum_{v=0}^{\infty} (-1)^v x^{n+kv} / (n+kv)!$ , ( $k = 1, 2, \dots; n = 0, 1, \dots, k-1$ ). " *Ann. Soc. Polon. Math.* 21 (1948): 46-51.
4. S. P. Pethe & A. Sharma. "Functions Analogous to Completely Convex Functions." *Rocky Mountain J. Math.* 3, no. 4 (1973):591-617.
5. S. Pethe. "On Lucas Polynomials and Some Summation Formulas for Chebychev Polynomial Sequences via Them." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 22, no. 1 (1984): 61-69.
6. H. W. Turnbull & A. C. Aitken. *An Introduction to the Theory of Canonical Matrices*. New York: Dover Publications, 1961.
7. J. E. Walton. "Lucas Polynomials and Certain Circular Functions of Matrices." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 14, no. 1 (1976):83-87.

◆◆◆◆ -

# A LUCAS TRIANGLE PRIMALITY CRITERION DUAL TO THAT OF MANN-SHANKS

H. W. GOULD

*West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV 26506*

W. E. GREIG

*Jackson State University, Jackson, MS 39203*

(Submitted July 1983)

Consider the following array of numbers

| $n \backslash k$ | 0 | 1  | 2  | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10 | 11 |
|------------------|---|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|
| 1                | 1 | 2  |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |    |
| 2                | 1 | 3  | 2  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |    |
| 3                | 1 | 4  | 5  | 2   |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |    |
| 4                | 1 | 5  | 9  | 7   | 2   |     |     |     |     |     |    |    |
| 5                | 1 | 6  | 14 | 16  | 9   | 2   |     |     |     |     |    |    |
| 6                | 1 | 7  | 20 | 30  | 25  | 11  | 2   |     |     |     |    |    |
| 7                | 1 | 8  | 27 | 50  | 55  | 36  | 13  | 2   |     |     |    |    |
| 8                | 1 | 9  | 35 | 77  | 105 | 91  | 49  | 15  | 2   |     |    |    |
| 9                | 1 | 10 | 44 | 112 | 182 | 196 | 140 | 64  | 17  | 2   |    |    |
| 10               | 1 | 11 | 54 | 156 | 294 | 378 | 336 | 204 | 81  | 19  | 2  |    |
| 11               | 1 | 12 | 65 | 210 | 450 | 672 | 714 | 540 | 285 | 100 | 21 | 2  |

where any element in the array is found by the usual Pascal recurrence, i.e.,

$$A(n, k) = A(n-1, k) + A(n-1, k-1), \quad (1)$$

subject to the initial conditions  $A(1, 0) = 1$ ,  $A(1, 1) = 2$ , with  $A(n, k) = 0$  for  $k < 0$  or  $k > n$ . This array has been called a Lucas triangle by Feinberg [1], because rising diagonals sum to give the Lucas numbers 1, 3, 4, 7, 11, 18, 29, 47, 76, 123, 199, 322, ..., in contrast to the rising diagonals in the standard Pascal triangle where rising diagonals sum to give the Fibonacci numbers 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, ... . The seventh diagonal in our array is 1, 7, 14, 7; the eleventh diagonal is 1, 11, 44, 77, 55, 11. This suggests the following.

**Theorem 1.** The number  $D \geq 2$  is a prime number if and only if every entry that is greater than 1 along the  $D^{\text{th}}$  rising diagonal in the Lucas triangle is divisible by  $D$ .

Before giving a proof, we set down further notation in order to rephrase the theorem.

It is easy to prove directly from (1), or one can quote the general theorem of Gupta [4], that

$$A(n, k) = \binom{n}{k} + \binom{n-1}{k-1}, \quad (2)$$

so that the Lucas triangle is simply a combination of two shifted Pascal triangles. Let  $D$  be the diagonal number in question and let  $j$  be the position of an entry along that diagonal, then a typical element of the diagonal is given by  $A(D-j, j)$ , where  $0 \leq j \leq D/2$ . We can now rephrase Theorem 1 as follows.



**Theorem 2.**  $D \geq 2$  is a prime number if and only if  $D \mid A(D-j, j)$  for all  $j$  such that  $1 \leq j \leq D/2$ .

Proof: We have from (2) that

$$\begin{aligned} A(D-j, j) &= \binom{D-j}{j} + \binom{D-j-1}{j-1} = D \binom{D-j-1}{D-2j} / j \\ &= D(D-j-1)! / j!(D-2j)!. \end{aligned}$$

If  $D = p$  is a prime  $\geq 2$ , we observe that  $(j!, p) = 1$  and  $((p-2j)!, p) = 1$  for  $1 \leq j \leq p/2$  so that surely  $j!(p-2j)! \mid (p-j-1)!$  and therefore  $p$  is a factor of the number  $p \cdot ((p-j-1)! / j!(p-2j)!)$ .

Now suppose that  $D$  is composite. Then, from the formula for  $A$ ,

$$D \mid A(D-j, j) \text{ if and only if } D \mid D \binom{D-j-1}{D-2j} / j.$$

We will show that for a composite  $D$ , some  $j$  cannot divide  $\binom{D-j-1}{D-2j}$ . Recall

that for the binomial coefficients we have  $\binom{x}{m} = (-1)^m \binom{-x+m-1}{m}$ . Therefore

$$j \mid \binom{D-j-1}{D-2j} \text{ if and only if } j \mid \binom{-j}{D-2j}.$$

we need not consider the question of divisibility of the entries in any diagonal by  $D$  when  $D$  is even, since the last entry is always a 2 for even  $D$ , so we can restrict our analysis to odd composite  $D > 3$ . Put  $D = p(2k+1)$ , where  $p$  is an odd prime factor of  $D$ , and choose  $j = pk$ . Then we are concerned with whether

$$pk \mid \binom{-pk}{p}.$$

But

$$\frac{1}{pk} \binom{-pk}{p} = \frac{-(-pk-1)(-pk-2) \cdots (-pk-p+1)}{p(p-1)(p-2) \cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}, \quad (3)$$

and we observe that the factors  $p-1, p-2, \dots, 3, 2$  cannot affect the divisibility of the numerator by  $p$  since  $(p, p-r) = 1$  for all  $1 \leq r \leq p-1$ . Furthermore,  $p$  is relatively prime to every factor in the numerator; that is,

$$(p, pk+s) = 1 \text{ for all } 1 \leq s \leq p-1,$$

and so the indicated quotient cannot be an integer. This completes the proof.

We now claim that Theorem 2 is a dual to the criterion discovered by Mann and Shanks [7]. In [2] and [3] it is shown that the Mann-Shanks criterion can be restated as follows.

**Theorem 3.** The number  $C \geq 2$  is a prime number if and only if

$$R \mid \binom{R}{C-2R} \quad (4)$$

for all  $R \geq 1$  such that  $C/3 \leq R \leq C/2$ .

Comparison of our proof of the new prime criterion with that of the Mann-Shanks criterion in [2], [3], and [7] shows that the same considerations have been made using (3), except that the numerator in the earlier proof was

$$(pk-1)(pk-2) \cdots (pk-p+1)$$

# A LUCAS TRIANGLE PRIMALITY CRITERION DUAL TO THAT OF MANN-SHANKS

and the minus sign made no difference in the argument. In fact, we see that our new criterion may be restated as follows.

Theorem 4. The number  $C \geq 2$  is a prime number if and only if

$$R \mid \begin{pmatrix} -R \\ C - 2R \end{pmatrix} \quad (5)$$

for all  $R$  such that  $1 \leq R \leq C/2$ .

The natural display for our criterion is the Lucas triangle, just as the natural display for the Mann-Shanks criterion is their shifted Pascal triangle.

Since the rising diagonals in the Lucas triangle sum to give Lucas numbers, that is, as Feinberg [1] noted,

$$L_n = \sum_{j=0}^{[n/2]} A(n-j, j) = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{[n/2]} \frac{n}{j} \binom{n-j-1}{j-1} \quad (6)$$

where  $L_n = \alpha^n + \beta^n$  with  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  the roots of the equation  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$ , and  $L_{n+1} = L_n + L_{n-1}$ , subject to  $L_1 = 1$ ,  $L_2 = 3$ , then we have an obvious

Corollary. The Lucas numbers satisfy the congruence

$$L_p \equiv 1 \pmod{p} \quad (7)$$

for all primes  $p \geq 2$ .

This corollary is well known and can be found in Lehmer [6] or in [8].

That the converse of (7) does not hold follows from the well-known counter-example of Hoggatt and Bicknell that

$$L_{705} \equiv 1 \pmod{705 = 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 47},$$

although Lind [8] used computer calculations to show that, for all  $2 \leq n < 700$ ,  $L_n \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  implies that  $n$  is prime.

In later papers, we shall exhibit and prove corresponding duals to the extensions of the Mann-Shanks criterion given in [2] and [3].

Remark: It is interesting to compare the criterion discussed here with the familiar fact that

$$n \mid \binom{n}{k} \text{ for all } k \text{ with } 1 \leq k < n \text{ if and only if } n \text{ is a prime.}$$

Harborth [5] has shown that "almost all" binomial coefficients  $\binom{n}{k}$  are divisible by their row number  $n$ .

Finally, we note that the generating function for the  $A$ 's is clearly

$$(1 + 2x)(1 + x)^{n-1} = \sum_{k=0}^n A(n, k)x^k. \quad (8)$$

The results of this paper were first announced in an abstract [9] in 1977. There is now a rather extensive international bibliography on criteria related to the Mann-Shanks theorem, and we hope to summarize this at a later date.

The authors wish to thank the referee for comments and suggestions regarding the presentation of this paper.

# A LUCAS TRIANGLE PRIMALITY CRITERION DUAL TO THAT OF MANN-SHANKS

## REFERENCES

1. Mark Feinberg. "A Lucas Triangle." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 5, no. 5 (1967): 486-90.
2. H. W. Gould. "A New Primality Criterion of Mann and Shanks and Its Relation to a Theorem of Hermite with Extension to Fibonomials." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 10, no. 4 (1972):355-64, 372.
3. H. W. Gould. "Generalization of Hermite's Divisibility Theorems and the Mann-Shanks Primality Criterion for  $s$ -Fibonomial Arrays." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 12, no. 2 (1974):157-66.
4. H. Gupta. "The Combinatorial Recurrence." *Indian J. Pure Appl. Math.* 4 (1973):529-32.
5. H. Harborth. "Divisibility of Binomial Coefficients by Their Row Number." *Amer. Math. Monthly* 84 (1977):35-37.
6. Emma Lehmer. "On the Infinitude of Fibonacci Pseudo-Primes." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 2, no. 3 (1964):229-30.
7. Henry B. Mann & Daniel Shanks. "A Necessary and Sufficient Condition for Primality, and Its Source." *J. Comb. Theory Ser. A*, 13 (1972):131-34.
8. Problem B-93, *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 4, no. 2 (1966):191, proposed by M. Pettet; Solution, *ibid.* 5, no. 1 (1967):111-12, by D. A. Lind.
9. H.W. Gould & W.E. Greig. "A Lucas Triangle Primality Criterion." *Notices of the Amer. Math. Soc.* 24 (1977):A-231, Abstract #\*77T-A72.

◆◆◆◆

## EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

G. L. COHEN and R. J. WILLIAMS

*The New South Wales Institute of Technology,  
Broadway, New South Wales, 2007, Australia  
(Submitted July 1983)*

### 1. INTRODUCTION

Throughout this paper we shall suppose that  $N$  is an odd perfect number, so that  $N$  is an odd integer and  $\sigma(N) = 2N$ , where  $\sigma$  is the positive-divisor-sum function. There is no known example of an odd perfect number, and it has not been proved that none exists. However, a great number of necessary conditions which must be satisfied by  $N$  have been established. The first of these, due to Euler, is that

$$N = p^\alpha q_1^{2\beta_1} \dots q_t^{2\beta_t}$$

for distinct odd primes  $p, q_1, \dots, q_t$ , with  $p \equiv \alpha \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . (We shall always assume this form for the prime factor decomposition of  $N$ ). Many writers have found conditions which must be satisfied by the exponents  $2\beta_1, \dots, 2\beta_t$ , and it is our intention here to extend some of those results. We shall find it necessary to call on a number of conditions of other types, some of which have only recently been found. These are outlined in Section 2.

It is known (see [8]) that we cannot have  $\beta_i \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$  for all  $i$  or (see [9])  $\beta_i \equiv 17 \pmod{35}$  for all  $i$ . Also, if  $\beta_1 = \dots = \beta_t = \beta$ , then: from [6],  $\beta \neq 2$ ; from [4],  $\beta \neq 3$ ; and from [9],  $\beta \neq 5, 12, 24$ , or  $62$ . We shall prove

**Theorem 1.** If  $N$  as above is an odd perfect number and  $\beta_1 = \dots = \beta_t = \beta$ , then  $\beta \neq 6, 8, 11, 14$ , or  $18$ .

The possibility that  $\beta_2 = \dots = \beta_t = 1$  (with  $\beta_1 > 1$ ) has also been considered. In this case, it is known (see [1]) that  $\beta_1 \neq 2$  and (see [7]) that  $\beta_1 \neq 3$ ; by a previously mentioned result [8], we also have that  $\beta_1 \not\equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . We shall prove

**Theorem 2.** If  $N$  as above is an odd perfect number and  $\beta_2 = \dots = \beta_t = 1$ , then  $\beta_1 \neq 5$  or  $6$ .

The computations required to prove these two theorems were mostly carried out on the Honeywell 66/40 computer at The New South Wales Institute of Technology. We also made use of some factorizations in [10].

Finally, we shall introduce a theorem whose proof is quite elementary, but it is a result which, to our knowledge, has not been noted previously. Euler's form for  $N$ , shown above, follows quickly by considering the equation  $\sigma(N) = 2N$ , modulo 4. Using the modulus 8 instead, we will obtain

**Theorem 3.** If  $N$  as above is an odd perfect number and  $x$  is the number of prime powers  $q_i^{2\beta_i}$  in which both  $q_i \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $\beta_i \equiv 1 \pmod{2}$ , then

$$p - \alpha \equiv 4x \pmod{8}.$$

## EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

To obtain the following corollary, we then only need to notice that  $x = 0$ .

Corollary. If  $N$  as above is an odd perfect number and  $\beta_i \equiv 0 \pmod{2}$  for all  $i$ , then  $p \equiv \alpha \pmod{8}$ .

### 2. PRELIMINARY RESULTS

Since we are assuming that  $\sigma(N) = 2N$ , it is clear in the first place that any odd divisor of  $\sigma(N)$  is also a divisor of  $N$ . The proof of Theorem 1 makes use of the following facts.

- (i)  $N$  is divisible by  $(p+1)/2$  (since  $\alpha$  is odd).
- (ii) If  $q$  and  $2\beta+1=r$  are primes, then  $r|\sigma(q^{2\beta})$  if and only if  $q \equiv 1 \pmod{r}$ . Furthermore, if  $r|\sigma(q^{2\beta})$ , then  $r \parallel \sigma(q^{2\beta})$ . If  $s|\sigma(q^{2\beta})$  and  $s \neq r$ , then  $s \equiv 1 \pmod{r}$ . (This is a special case of results given, for example, in [9].)
- (iii) If  $\beta_1 = \dots = \beta_t = \beta$  and  $2\beta+1=r$  is prime, then  $r^4|N$  and  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{r}$ . In particular,  $p \neq r$ . (See [6] for generalizations of this.)
- (iv) If  $n|N$ , then  $\sigma(n)/n \leq 2$ .

The proof of Theorem 2 uses (i), (ii), and (iv), as well as the following results.

- (v) The second greatest prime factor of  $N$  is at least 1009 (see [3]) and the greatest at least 100129 (see [5]).
- (vi) The equation  $q^2 + q + 1 = p^a$  has no solution in primes  $p$  and  $q$  if  $a$  is an integer greater than 1 (see [1]).

### 3. PROOF OF THEOREM 1

We shall assume that  $\beta = 6, 8, 11, 14$ , and  $18$ , in turn, and in each case obtain a contradiction, usually along the following lines. In each case,  $2\beta+1=r$  is prime so that, by (iii),  $r^{2\beta} \parallel N$ . Then  $\sigma(r^{2\beta})|N$ . If  $s$  is prime,  $s \neq p$  and  $s|\sigma(r^{2\beta})$ , then  $s \equiv 1 \pmod{r}$  and  $s^{2\beta} \parallel N$ , so that  $r \parallel \sigma(s^{2\beta})$ , by (ii). Applying the same process to other prime factors of  $\sigma(s^{2\beta})$  and repeating it sufficiently often, we find that  $r^{2\beta+1}|N$ , which is our contradiction.

Except in the case  $\beta = 8$ , we were not able to carry out sufficiently many factorizations explicitly. (We generally restricted ourselves to seeking prime factors less than  $5 \times 10^6$ .) However, we were able to test whether unfactored quotients were pseudoprime (base 3) or not. Each  $P$  below is a pseudoprime and each  $M$  is an unfactored quotient which is not a pseudoprime, and hence is not a prime. We checked that each  $M$  was not a perfect power so that the existence of two distinct prime factors of each  $M$  was assured. We checked also that no  $M$ 's or  $P$ 's within each case had any prime factors in common with each other or with known factors of  $N$ . In this way, we could distinguish sufficiently many distinct prime factors of  $N$  to imply that  $r^{2\beta+1}|N$ . There is a slightly special treatment required when  $\beta = 6$ .

We shall give the details of the proof here only in the cases  $\beta = 6$  and  $\beta = 11$ . These illustrate well the methods involved. The other parts of the proof are available from the first named author.

(a) Suppose  $\beta = 6$ , so that  $13^{12} \parallel N$ ;  $\sigma(13^{12}) = 53 \cdot 264031 \cdot 1803647$ . The relevant factorizations are given in Table 1. We distinguish two main cases.

EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

Table 1.

| $q$                                  | Some factors of $\sigma(q^{12})/13$                       |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 53<br>264031<br>1803647<br>131<br>79 | 3297113, $P_1$<br>$P_2$<br>131, $M_1$<br>79, $Q$<br>$M_2$ |
| (A) 131                              | $Q = M_3$   |
| (B) 131<br>$q_9$                     | $Q = q_9$<br>$q_{10}$                                     |

Suppose first that  $p \neq 53$ . We may assume that  $q_{2i-1}q_{2i}|M_i$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ) and  $q_{j+4}|P_j$  ( $j = 1, 2$ ). In Table 1,  $Q$  is also a pseudoprime (base 3) and we need to consider two distinct alternatives. In (A), we suppose that  $Q = M_3$  is composite, so that  $q_7q_8|M_3$ , say. (We checked that  $Q$  was not a perfect power.) In (B), we suppose that  $Q$  is prime, so we write  $Q = q_9$ . If this is so, then  $q_9 \neq p$ , since  $Q \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Thus, we have 14 primes:

53, 79, 131, 264031, 1803647, 3297113,  $q_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 6$ )

with  $q_7$  and  $q_8$ , or with  $q_9$  and  $q_{10}$ . Each of these primes is congruent to 1 (mod 13) and at most one of them might be  $p$ . Put

$$\Lambda = \{53, 79, 131, 264031, 1803647, 3297113, M_1, M_2, P_1, P_2, Q, (Q^{13} - 1)/(Q - 1)\}.$$

We checked that no two elements of  $\Lambda$  had a common prime factor; therefore, the 14 primes above are distinct. Hence,  $13^{13}|N$ , the desired contradiction.

Now suppose that  $p = 53$ . By (i),  $3|N$  and so  $\sigma(3^{12}) = 797161|N$ . Certainly there is a prime  $q_{11}$  dividing  $\sigma(797161^{12})/13$ . We thus have 13 primes:

79, 131, 264031, 797161, 1803647,  $q_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 4$ ),  $q_6$ ,  $q_{11}$

with  $q_7$  and  $q_8$ , or with  $q_9$  and  $q_{10}$ . Each of these is congruent to 1 (mod 13), and we checked that no two elements of the set

$$(\Lambda - \{53, 3297113, P_1\}) \cup \{797161, \sigma(797161^{12})/13\}$$

had a common prime factor. Hence, again,  $13^{13}|N$ .

(b) Suppose  $\beta = 11$ , so that  $23^{22}||N$ , and note that

$$\sigma(23^{22}) = 461 \cdot 1289 \cdot M_1.$$

Now refer to Table 2, where an asterisk signifies that the prime is 1 (mod 4), when that is relevant.

There are three cases to consider. First, suppose that  $p = 1289$ . By (i),  $3 \cdot 5|N$  so that  $n_1|N$  where  $n_1 = (3 \cdot 5 \cdot 23 \cdot 47)^{22}$ ; but  $\sigma(n_1)/n_1 > 2$ , contradicting (iv). Similarly, if  $p = 461$ , then we have  $3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11|N$  so that  $n_2|N$  where  $n_2 = (3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 23)^{22}$ ; but  $\sigma(n_2)/n_2 > 2$ .

Now suppose that  $p \neq 461$  and  $p \neq 1289$ . We may suppose that  $q_{2i-1}q_{2i}|M_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 7$ ) and  $q_{15}|P$ . Thus,  $N$  is divisible by the following 24 primes, each 1 (mod 23):

47, 139, 461, 1289, 37123, 133723, 281153, 300749, 2258831,  $q_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq 15$ ).

# EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

Table 2

| $q$     | Some factors of $\sigma(q^{2^2})/23$ |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| 461*    | 139, 133723, $P$                     |
| 133723  | 47, 37123, 2258831, $461 \cdot M_2$  |
| 2258831 | 300749, * $M_3$                      |
| 1289*   | 281153, * $M_4$                      |
| 47      | $M_5$                                |
| 139     | $M_6$                                |
| 37123   | $M_7$                                |

We checked that the 24 primes given above were distinct. One of them might be  $p$ , so  $23^{2^3} | N$ , our usual contradiction.

This shows that  $\beta \neq 11$ . We remark that we also looked at the remaining possible values of  $\beta$  less than 15, namely, 9, 15, 20, 21, and 23, without further success.

## 4. PROOF OF THEOREM 2

We begin by proving more than is stated in Theorem 2 in the case in which  $3 \nmid N$ .

Lemma. If  $N$  as before is an odd perfect number,  $3 \nmid N$  and  $\beta_2 = \cdots = \beta_t = 1$ , then  $\beta_1 \neq 5, 6$ , or  $8$ .

Proof: We will show first that, if  $\beta_1 = 5, 6$ , or  $8$ , then  $7 \nmid N$ . Notice that  $q_i \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$  ( $2 \leq i \leq t$ ), since, otherwise,  $3 | \sigma(q_i^2) | N$ . In particular,  $7^2 \nmid N$ , so that  $q_1 = 7$  if  $7 | N$ . In that case, we obtain contradictions, as follows.

If  $\beta_1 = 5$ , then  $7^{10} | N$ . But  $1123 | \sigma(7^{10}) | N$  and  $p \neq 1123$ , so  $1123^2 \nmid N$ . But  $1123 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . If  $\beta_1 = 6$ , then  $7^{12} \nmid N$ . Then  $r = \sigma(7^{12}) = 16148168401 | N$ ; if  $r = p$ , then  $103 | N$ , by (i). However,  $103 \equiv r \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . If  $\beta_1 = 8$ , then  $7^{16} \nmid N$ ,  $14009 | \sigma(7^{16}) | N$ . Then  $p \neq 14009$ , else  $3 | N$  by (i), so  $14009^2 \nmid N$ . But  $223 | \sigma(14009^2)$  and  $223 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ .

Now we can show that  $13 \nmid N$  for any of these values of  $\beta_1$ . Since  $N$  is not divisible by either 3 or 7, we must have  $q_1 = 13$  if  $13 | N$ . Then  $\beta_1 \neq 5$ , else  $23 | \sigma(13^{10}) | N$  and  $7 | \sigma(23^2) | N$ . Also,  $\beta_1 \neq 6$ , else  $264031 | \sigma(13^{12}) | N$  and  $264031 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Similarly,  $\beta_1 \neq 8$ , else  $103 | \sigma(13^{16}) | N$ .

Notice next that, by (ii), divisors of  $\sigma(q_i^2)$  ( $2 \leq i \leq t$ ) are congruent to 1 (mod 3), so that  $\sigma(q_i^2) = p^{a_i} q_1^{b_i}$  for some  $a_i, b_i$  ( $0 \leq a_i \leq \alpha$ ,  $0 \leq b_i \leq 2\beta_1$ ) and for each  $i$  ( $2 \leq i \leq t$ ). There can be at most  $2\beta_1$  values of  $i \geq 2$  such that  $q_1 | \sigma(q_i^2)$ ; by (vi), there is at most one value of  $i \geq 2$  such that  $\sigma(q_i^2) = p^c$  ( $c \geq 1$ ). It follows that  $N$  has at most  $2\beta_1 + 3$  distinct prime factors. Of these, at most two are congruent to 1 (mod 3), namely,  $p$  and  $q_1$ . By (i), certainly  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ , so that in fact  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{12}$ .

In our case, when  $\beta_1 = 5, 6$ , or  $8$ , we must have  $p \geq 37$  (since  $13 \nmid N$ ) and has at most 19 distinct prime factors. Using (v), we can now obtain the final contradiction which proves the lemma:

$$2 = \frac{\sigma(N)}{N} = \frac{p - p^{-\alpha}}{p - 1} \prod_{i=1}^t \frac{q_i - q_i^{-2\beta_i}}{q_i - 1} < \frac{p}{p - 1} \prod_{i=1}^t \frac{q_i}{q_i - 1} \quad (\text{continued})$$

# EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

$$< \frac{5}{4} \frac{11}{10} \frac{17}{16} \frac{19}{18} \frac{23}{22} \frac{29}{28} \frac{37}{36} \frac{41}{40} \frac{47}{46} \frac{53}{52} \frac{59}{58} \frac{71}{70} \frac{83}{82} \frac{89}{88} \frac{101}{100} \frac{107}{106} \frac{113}{112} \frac{1009}{1008} \frac{100129}{100128} < 2.$$

We shall give the remaining details only in the case  $\beta_1 = 6$ ; the proof for the case  $\beta_1 = 5$  is available from the first named author. By the Lemma, we can assume that  $3|N$ .

We will assume first that  $q_1 = 3$ . Then  $797161 = \sigma(3^{12})|N$ . We cannot have  $p = 797161$  because then, by (i),  $398581^2 \nmid N$ :  $1621|\sigma(398581^2)$ ,  $7 \cdot 13|\sigma(1621^2)$ ,  $19|\sigma(7^2)$ , and  $127|\sigma(19^2)$ , so that  $n|N$ , where  $n = 3^{12}(7 \cdot 13 \cdot 19 \cdot 127)^2$ ; but  $\sigma(n)/n > 2$  and (iv) is contradicted. Hence,  $797161^2 \nmid N$ .

Notice that  $\sigma(797161^2) = 3 \cdot 61 \cdot 151 \cdot 22996651$ ; also note that  $7|\sigma(151^2)$  and  $19|\sigma(7^2)$ . Thus,  $7^2 19^2 \nmid N$ . Making use of (i), we then see that  $p \neq 1693$ , since then  $(p+1)/2 = 7 \cdot 11^2$  and  $7|\sigma(11^2)$ , so that  $7^3|N$ , and  $p \neq 433$ , since then  $(p+1)/2 = 7 \cdot 31$ ,  $331|\sigma(31^2)$  and  $7|\sigma(331^2)$ , so that again  $7^3|N$ . We now observe that

$$43|\sigma(22996651^2), \quad 631|\sigma(43^2), \quad 433|\sigma(631^2), \quad 1693|\sigma(433^2), \quad 13|\sigma(1693^2),$$

so that  $n|N$ , where  $n = 3^{12}13(7 \cdot 19 \cdot 43)^2$ ; but  $\sigma(n)/n > 2$ , contradicting (iv).

Now, we assume that  $3^2 \nmid N$ , so that we can have at most two values of  $i \geq 2$  with  $q_i \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . We have  $13 = \sigma(3^2)|N$ .

First, we will suppose that  $p = 13$ , so that, by (i),  $7|N$ . We cannot have  $q_1 = 7$ , because  $\sigma(7^{12}) = 16148168401 = r$  is prime,  $433|\sigma(r^2)$ ,  $37|\sigma(433^2)$ , and  $37 \equiv 433 \equiv r \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Hence,  $7^2 \nmid N$ , so  $19|\sigma(7^2)|N$ . Again,  $q_1 \neq 19$ , because  $599 \cdot 29251|\sigma(19^{12})$ ,  $51343|\sigma(599^2)$ , and  $29251 \equiv 51343 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Thus,  $19^2 \nmid N$  and for no further values of  $i$  can we have  $q_i \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Therefore, we have  $127|\sigma(19^2)|N$ .

Clearly,  $127^2 \nmid N$ , so  $q_1 = 127$ . Setting  $q_2 = 7$  and  $q_3 = 19$ , we must have, for  $i \geq 4$ ,  $\sigma(q_i^2) = 7^{a_i} 13^{b_i} 19^{c_i} 127^{d_i}$  where  $a_i \leq 1$ ,  $b_i \leq 1$ ,  $c_i \leq 1$ , and  $d_i \leq 11$ , since, by (ii), any other prime divisors of  $\sigma(q_i^2)$  would be congruent to 1 (mod 3). Using (vi), as in the proof of the Lemma, it follows that there are at most 14 primes  $q_i$  with  $i \geq 4$ . We cannot have  $11|N$  [although  $\sigma(11^2) = 7 \cdot 19$ ], since then  $n|N$ , where  $n = 3^2 7^2 11^2 13 \cdot 19^2$ ; but  $\sigma(n)/n > 2$ , contradicting (iv). Possibly  $107|N$ , since  $\sigma(107^2) = 7 \cdot 13 \cdot 127$ , but we find that no other prime less than 500 can be  $q_i$  for some  $i \geq 4$ . Then we have our contradiction: there are 13 primes  $q$ ,  $503 \leq q \leq 653$ , that are congruent to 2 (mod 3); thus,

$$2 = \frac{\sigma(N)}{N} < \frac{\sigma(3^2 7^2 19^2)}{3^2 7^2 19^2} \frac{13}{12} \frac{107}{106} \frac{127}{126} \prod_{\substack{q=503 \\ q \equiv 2 \pmod{3}}}^{653} \frac{q}{q-1} < 2.$$

This shows that  $p \neq 13$ .

We cannot have  $q_1 = 13$ , because  $53 \cdot 264031|\sigma(13^{12})$ ,  $p \neq 53$  [else  $3^3|N$ , by (i)],  $\sigma(53^2) = 7 \cdot 409$  and  $7 \equiv 409 \equiv 264031 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Hence,  $13^2 \nmid N$ , so we have  $62|\sigma(13^2)|N$ .

Suppose that  $p = 61$ , so that, by (i),  $31|N$ . Then  $q_1 \neq 31$ , since  $\sigma(31^{12}) = 42407 \cdot 2426789 \cdot 7908811$ ,  $43|\sigma(7908811^2)$ , and  $13 \equiv 43 \equiv 7908811 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Thus,  $31^2 \nmid N$  and  $331|\sigma(31^2)|N$ . Since  $13 \equiv 31 \equiv 331 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ , then  $q_1 = 331$ . But  $53|\sigma(331^{12})$ ,  $7|\sigma(53^2)$ , and  $7 \equiv 13 \equiv 31 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . This shows that  $p \neq 61$ . Also,  $q_1 \neq 61$ , since  $187123|\sigma(61^{12})$ ,  $19|\sigma(187123^2)$ , and  $13 \equiv 19 \equiv 187123 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Hence,  $61^2 \nmid N$ , so  $97|\sigma(61^2)|N$ , and we can have no further values of  $i \geq 2$  with  $q_i \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . In particular,  $97^2 \nmid N$ .

If  $p = 97$ , then  $7|N$  by (i), so  $q_1 = 7$ ; but  $\sigma(7^{12}) = r$  (above)  $\equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ . Thus,  $q_1 = 97$ . But  $79|\sigma(97^{12})$  and  $79 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ .

This completes the proof.



# EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

## 5. PROOF OF THEOREM 3

We note first that, modulo 8,

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma(q_i^{2\beta_i}) &= 1 + q_i + q_i^2 + \cdots + q_i^{2\beta_i} \equiv 1 + q_i + 1 + \cdots + q_i + 1 \\ &= 1 + \beta_i(q_i + 1),\end{aligned}$$

and, writing  $\alpha = 4a + 1$ ,

$$\sigma(p^\alpha) = 1 + p\sigma(p^{\alpha-1}) \equiv 1 + p(1 + 2a(p + 1)) \equiv (2a + 1)(p + 1).$$

Since  $\sigma(N) = 2N$ , we have

$$(2a + 1)(p + 1) \prod_{i=1}^t (1 + \beta_i(q_i + 1)) \equiv 2p \pmod{8},$$

or, since  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ ,

$$(2a + 1) \frac{p + 1}{2} \prod_{i=1}^t (1 + \beta_i(q_i + 1)) \equiv 1 \pmod{4}.$$

If  $q_i \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $\beta_i \equiv 1 \pmod{2}$ , then  $1 + \beta_i(q_i + 1) \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ ; otherwise,  $1 + \beta_i(q_i + 1) \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Thus,

$$3^x(2a + 1) \frac{p + 1}{2} \equiv 1 \pmod{4}.$$

We see that  $3^x \equiv 2x + 1 \pmod{4}$ , so now

$$(2a + 2x + 1) \frac{p + 1}{2} \equiv 1 \pmod{4}.$$

Considering separately the possibilities  $p \equiv 1 \pmod{8}$  and  $p \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$ , we find that this is equivalent to

$$a + x \equiv \frac{p - 1}{4} \pmod{2},$$

or  $p - \alpha = p - 4a - 1 \equiv 4x \pmod{8}$ , as required.

**Note:** Since this paper was prepared for publication, we have noticed that Ewell [2] has also given a form of Theorem 3. Both his statement of the theorem and his proof are more complicated than the above.

## REFERENCES

1. A. Brauer. "On the Non-Existence of Odd Perfect Numbers of Form  $p^\alpha q_1^2 q_2^2 \dots q_{t-1}^2 q_t^4$ ." *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* 49 (1943):712-18.
2. J. A. Ewell. "On the Multiplicative Structure of Odd Perfect Numbers." *J. Number Th.* 12 (1980):339-42.
3. P. Hagis, Jr. "On the Second Largest Prime Divisor of an Odd Perfect Number." In *Analytic Number Theory*, Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 899, pp. 254-63. Berlin & New York: Springer-Verlag, 1981.
4. P. Hagis, Jr., & W. L. McDaniel. "A New Result Concerning the Structure of Odd Perfect Numbers." *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 32 (1972):13-15.

# EXTENSIONS OF SOME RESULTS CONCERNING ODD PERFECT NUMBERS

5. P. Hagis, Jr., & W. L. McDaniel. "On the Largest Prime Divisor of an Odd Perfect Number, II." *Math. Comp.* 29 (1975):922-24.
6. H.-J. Kanold. "Untersuchungen über ungerade vollkommene Zahlen." *J. Reine Angew. Math.* 183 (1941):98-109.
7. H.-J. Kanold. "Sätze über Kreisteilungspolynome und ihre Anwendungen auf einige zahlentheoretische Probleme, II." *J. Reine Angew. Math.* 188 (1950): 129-46.
8. W. L. McDaniel. "The Non-Existence of Odd Perfect Numbers of a Certain Form." *Arch. Math.* 21 (1970):52-53.
9. W. L. McDaniel & P. Hagis, Jr. "Some Results Concerning the Non-Existence of Odd Perfect Numbers of the Form  $p^{\alpha}M^{2^{\beta}}$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 13. no. 1 (1975):25-28.
10. B. Tuckerman. "Odd-Perfect-Number Tree to  $10^{36}$ , To Supplement 'A Search Procedure and Lower Bound for Odd Perfect Numbers,'" IBM Research Report RC-4695, 1974.

◆◆◆◆

# ON TRIANGULAR FIBONACCI NUMBERS

CHARLES R. WALL

Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC 29411

(Submitted July 1983)

*In Memory of Vern Hoggatt*

Let  $F_n$  denote the  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number:

$$F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1, F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1}.$$

Tallman [2] noted that  $0 = F_0$ ,  $1 = F_1 = F_2$ ,  $3 = F_4$ ,  $21 = F_8$ , and  $55 = F_{10}$  are triangular, i.e., of the form  $k(k+1)/2$ , and asked if any more Fibonacci numbers are triangular. In this paper, we develop some congruences which must be satisfied by  $n$  if  $F_n$  is triangular. As a result, we prove that there are no more triangular numbers among the first billion Fibonacci numbers.

Moreover, the congruences developed here are so strikingly similar that they suggest an approach to proving that the known triangular Fibonacci numbers are in fact the only ones. A pattern is strongly suggested, but unfortunately any underlying generality remains elusive, leaving us with a good notion of how to test, but with no assurances that such tests will succeed. Thus, in a sense, the results in this paper constitute mere *number crunching*, albeit on a rather massive scale, given the simplicity of the techniques.

Throughout this paper, let

$$A = 2^3 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 = 120$$

$$B = 7A = 2^3 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 = 840$$

$$C = 6B = 2^4 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 = 5040$$

$$D = 11C = 2^4 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 = 55,440$$

$$E = 10D = 2^5 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 = 554,400$$

$$F = 13E = 2^5 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 = 7,207,200$$

$$G = 17F = 2^5 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 17 = 122,522,400$$

$$H = 19G = 2^5 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 17 \cdot 19 = 2,327,925,600$$

Our approach is to show successively that

$$\text{if } F_n \text{ is triangular, then } n \equiv 0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 10, M/2 \text{ or } M - 1 \pmod{M} \quad (1)$$

for  $M = A, \dots, H$ . Once (1) is established for  $M = H$ , it follows at once that there are no new triangular Fibonacci numbers with subscript less than one billion.

At the heart of what we do here is the simple observation that an integer  $f$  is triangular if and only if  $8f + 1$  is a square.

If  $p$  is an odd prime, let  $Z(p)$  be the entry point of  $p$  in the Fibonacci sequence. That is,  $Z(p)$  is the subscript of the first Fibonacci number divisible by  $p$ . Then  $p|F_n$  if and only if  $Z(p)|n$ . Tables of  $Z(p)$  for  $p < 10^4$  may be found in [1].

Further, let  $k(p)$  be the period of the Fibonacci sequence modulo  $p$ . It is known that:

# ON TRIANGULAR FIBONACCI NUMBERS

If  $Z(p) = 2m + 1$ , then  $k(p) = 4Z(p)$ .

If  $Z(p) = 2(2m + 1)$ , then  $k(p) = Z(p)$ .

If  $Z(p) = 2^a(2m + 1)$  with  $a \geq 2$ , then  $k(p) = 2Z(p)$ .

What we will do is to find primes  $p$  for which  $k(p)$  divides the new modulus but not the old one, and then eliminate most choices of  $n$  relative to the new modulus by showing that  $1 + 8F_n$  is not a quadratic residue modulo  $p$ . The same thing may be done with composite moduli for alleged residues, but it was necessary to do so only once.

**Lemma.** If  $F$  is triangular, then  $n \equiv 0, 1, 2, 4, 8, 10, 20, 24$ , or  $39 \pmod{40}$ .

**Proof:** We cannot have  $n \equiv 3, 5, 6$ , or  $7 \pmod{10}$  or else  $1 + 8F_n$  is a non-residue  $\pmod{11}$ . We rule out  $n \equiv 9, 11, 12, 14$ , or  $18 \pmod{20}$  to avoid having  $1 + 8F_n$  be a nonresidue  $\pmod{5}$ . Similarly, we cannot have  $n \equiv 3, 5$ , or  $6 \pmod{8}$  or else  $1 + 8F_n$  is a nonresidue  $\pmod{3}$ . Finally,  $n \equiv 28 \pmod{40}$  is impossible because  $1 + 8F_{28}$  is a nonresidue  $\pmod{41}$ .

**Theorem.** (1) holds for  $M = A, B, C, D, E, F, G$ , and  $H$ .

**Proof:** The lemma and Table 1 establish the result for  $M = A$ ; in Table 1 and the following tables, the entry gives a modulus which eliminates  $F_n$  as a triangular number. Then Table 2 establishes the result for  $M = B$ . The proofs for  $M = C, D, E, F, G$ , and  $H$  are given in Tables 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8, respectively.

Table 1

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ x \end{smallmatrix}$ | $x$  | $x+1$ | $x+2$ | $x+4$ | $x+8$ | $x+10$ | $x+20$ | $x+24$ | $x+39$ |
|--|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 0  |      |       |       |       |       |        | 31     | 31     | 9      |
| 40   | 2521 | 9     | 31    | 61    | 31    | 31     |        | 2521   | 9      |
| 80   | 31   | 9     | 2521  | 31    | 31    | 2521   | 2521   | 61     |        |

Table 2

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ x \end{smallmatrix}$ | $x$ | $x+1$ | $x+2$ | $x+4$ | $x+8$ | $x+10$ | $x+A/2$ | $x+A-1$ |
|--|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| 0  |     |       |       |       |       |        | 911     | 29      |
| A  | 421 | 29    | 71    | 1427  | 71    | 911    | 911     | 71      |
| 2A   | 911 | 29    | 911   | 71    | 71    | 911    | 13      | 29      |
| 3A   | 83  | 29    | 13    | 71    | 281   | 83     |         | 29      |
| 4A   | 911 | 29    | 71    | 83    | 281   | 281    | 421     | 29      |
| 5A   | 911 | 71    | 71    | 71    | 911   | 13     | 911     | 29      |
| 6A   | 13  | 29    | 71    | 911   | 13    | 911    | 281     |         |

Table 3

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ x \end{smallmatrix}$ | $x$ | $x+1$ | $x+2$ | $x+4$ | $x+8$ | $x+10$ | $x+B/2$ | $x+B-1$ |
|--|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| 0  |     |       |       |       |       |        | 19      | 19      |
| B  | 19  | 19    | 19    | 19    | 19    | 17     | 17      | 7       |
| 2B   | 19  | 19    | 17    | 17    | 19    | 19     | 19      | 167     |
| 3B   |     | 167   | 167   | 7     | 241   | 23     | 19      | 19      |
| 4B   | 19  | 19    | 19    | 19    | 17    | 17     | 167     | 19      |
| 5B   | 19  | 19    | 17    | 17    | 19    | 19     | 19      |         |

Table 4

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ x \end{smallmatrix}$ | $x$ | $x+1$ | $x+2$ | $x+4$ | $x+8$ | $x+10$ | $x+C/2$ | $x+C-1$ |
|--|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| 0  |     |       |       |       |       |        | 881     | 89      |
| C  | 89  | 199   | 89    | 89    | 89    | 89     | 43      | 199     |
| 2C   | 43  | 199   | 89    | 43    | 881   | 307    | 199     | 199     |
| 3C   | 89  | 199   | 89    | 89    | 43    | 199    | 199     | 199     |
| 4C   | 331 | 199   | 881   | 661   | 199   | 199    | 199     | 199     |
| 5C   | 89  | 43    | 89    | 331   | 199   | 199    |         | 43      |
| 6C   | 881 | 199   | 307   | 199   | 199   | 307    | 89      | 199     |
| 7C   | 43  | 199   | 199   | 199   | 331   | 991    | 43      | 199     |
| 8C   | 199 | 199   | 199   | 199   | 89    | 89     | 89      | 199     |
| 9C   | 199 | 199   | 199   | 331   | 43    | 89     | 331     | 199     |
| 10C  | 199 | 89    | 307   | 89    | 89    | 89     | 89      |         |

# ON TRIANGULAR FIBONACCI NUMBERS

Table 5

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ X \end{smallmatrix}$ | X    | X+1  | X+2  | X+4  | X+8  | X+10 | X+D/2 | X+D-1 |
|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 0  |      |      |      |      |      |      | 151   | 3001  |
| D  | 101  | 151  | 101  | 3001 | 101  | 47   | 3001  | 101   |
| 2D   | 3001 | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 151  | 101  | 3041  | 101   |
| 3D   | 151  | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 3001 | 47   | 101   | 151   |
| 4D   | 3001 | 3001 | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 151  | 3001  | 1601  |
| 5D   |      | 1601 | 1601 | 1103 | 1103 | 47   | 151   | 3001  |
| 6D   | 101  | 151  | 101  | 3001 | 101  | 701  | 3001  | 101   |
| 7D   | 3001 | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 151  | 101  | 1103  | 101   |
| 8D   | 151  | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 3001 | 701  | 101   | 151   |
| 9D   | 3001 | 3001 | 101  | 3001 | 3001 | 151  | 3001  |       |

Table 6

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ X \end{smallmatrix}$ | X    | X+1 | X+2  | X+4  | X+8  | X+10 | X+E/2 | X+E-1 |
|--|------|-----|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 0  |      |     |      |      |      |      | 521   | 103   |
| E  | 79   | 521 | 79   | 79   | 859  | 521  | 521   | 521   |
| 2E   | 1951 | 521 | 131  | 859  | 521  | 521  | 521   | 521   |
| 3E   | 131  | 859 | 2081 | 233  | 521  | 521  | 521   | 859   |
| 4E   | 79   | 233 | 859  | 521  | 521  | 521  | 521   | 103   |
| 5E   | 233  | 521 | 521  | 521  | 521  | 521  | 521   | 521   |
| 6E   | 521  | 79  | 521  | 521  | 521  | 521  |       | 79    |
| 7E   | 521  | 521 | 521  | 521  | 521  | 521  | 79    | 521   |
| 8E   | 521  | 103 | 521  | 521  | 521  | 1951 | 1951  | 233   |
| 9E   | 521  | 859 | 521  | 521  | 79   | 859  | 131   | 859   |
| 10E  | 521  | 521 | 521  | 521  | 2081 | 3329 | 79    | 521   |
| 11E  | 521  | 521 | 521  | 2081 | 79   | 79   | 3121  | 521   |
| 12E  | 521  | 103 | 79   | 859  | 131  | 859  | 521   |       |

Table 7

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ X \end{smallmatrix}$ | X    | X+1  | X+2  | X+4  | X+8  | X+10 | X+F/2 | X+F-1 |
|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 0  |      |      |      |      |      |      | 239   | 919   |
| F  | 3571 | 3571 | 3469 | 3571 | 3571 | 3469 | 3571  | 1597  |
| 2F   | 67   | 919  | 919  | 67   | 883  | 919  | 3469  | 3571  |
| 3F   | 1597 | 919  | 3571 | 919  | 1597 | 3571 | 1597  | 67    |
| 4F   | 1597 | 3469 | 919  | 1021 | 3469 | 3469 | 919   | 3571  |
| 5F   | 3571 | 3571 | 3469 | 3571 | 3571 | 1597 | 3571  | 67    |
| 6F   | 239  | 1597 | 919  | 67   | 67   | 1597 | 919   | 373   |
| 7F   | 919  | 3571 | 3571 | 1597 | 3469 | 3571 | 919   | 1597  |
| 8F   | 919  | 1597 | 3469 | 1597 | 919  | 239  |       | 1597  |
| 9F   | 1871 | 1597 | 919  | 3571 | 3571 | 919  | 3571  | 3571  |
| 10F  | 3571 | 373  | 373  | 3469 | 919  | 67   | 67    | 1597  |
| 11F  | 3469 | 67   | 1223 | 239  | 1597 | 3571 | 1597  | 3571  |
| 12F  | 1597 | 3571 | 3571 | 3469 | 1597 | 239  | 1597  | 3469  |
| 13F  | 919  | 67   | 3571 | 919  | 3571 | 919  | 3571  | 919   |
| 14F  | 3571 | 3571 | 1597 | 3571 | 3469 | 1223 | 239   | 919   |
| 15F  | 919  | 1597 | 1597 | 3469 | 919  | 3571 | 919   | 3571  |
| 16F  | 919  | 919  | 3571 | 1597 | 67   | 3469 | 919   |       |

Table 8

| $\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ X \end{smallmatrix}$ | X    | X+1  | X+2  | X+4  | X+8  | X+10 | X+G/2 | X+G-1 |
|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 0  |      |      |      |      |      |      | 113   | 9349  |
| G  | 113  | 113  | 37   | 9349 | 9349 | 229  | 9349  | 9349  |
| 2G   | 37   | 9349 | 37   | 9349 | 9349 | 37   | 229   | 797   |
| 3G   | 229  | 37   | 37   | 9349 | 37   | 9349 | 9349  | 37    |
| 4G   | 797  | 9349 | 9349 | 113  | 227  | 227  | 9349  | 9349  |
| 5G   | 191  | 9349 | 9349 | 9349 | 37   | 37   | 37    | 37    |
| 6G   | 229  | 229  | 9349 | 229  | 9349 | 37   | 2281  | 9349  |
| 7G   | 9349 | 37   | 229  | 9349 | 229  | 229  | 37    | 9349  |
| 8G   | 9349 | 761  | 9349 | 9349 | 113  | 37   | 9349  | 37    |
| 9G   | 9349 | 37   | 37   | 37   | 37   | 37   |       | 37    |
| 10G  | 113  | 37   | 9349 | 229  | 419  | 37   | 113   | 761   |
| 11G  | 9349 | 9349 | 9349 | 37   | 761  | 9349 | 37    | 37    |
| 12G  | 229  | 9349 | 191  | 9349 | 191  | 9349 | 229   | 229   |
| 13G  | 9349 | 37   | 683  | 227  | 229  | 9349 | 797   | 9349  |
| 14G  | 9349 | 9349 | 37   | 113  | 9349 | 229  | 191   | 9349  |
| 15G  | 37   | 37   | 9349 | 37   | 9349 | 9349 | 229   | 37    |
| 16G  | 2281 | 797  | 229  | 229  | 9349 | 37   | 9349  | 9349  |
| 17G  | 37   | 9349 | 37   | 229  | 113  | 9349 | 9349  | 113   |
| 18G  | 9349 | 9349 | 37   | 227  | 9349 | 9349 | 9349  |       |

## REFERENCES

1. Bro. Alfred Brousseau, ed. *Fibonacci and Related Number Theoretic Tables*, pp. 25-32. Santa Clara, Calif.: The Fibonacci Association, 1972.
2. Malcolm H. Tallman. Advanced Problem H-23. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 3 (1963):47.

◆◆◆◆◆

## GUESSING EXACT SOLUTIONS

CHARLES R. WALL

*Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC 29411*

(Submitted July 1983)

A recent problem [1] in this journal provides a nice illustration of a technique for guessing exact solutions of polynomial equations from approximate solutions. The technique depends on nothing more complicated than the familiar fact that if  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  has roots  $s$  and  $t$ , then  $s + t = -b/a$  and  $st = c/a$ .

Problem H-335 asked for exact solutions of the equation

$$x^5 - 5x^3 + 5x - 1 = 0. \quad (1)$$

One of the solutions is  $x = 1$ , and dividing (1) by  $x - 1$  yields

$$x^4 + x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0. \quad (2)$$

Using bracketing techniques and a calculator, it is relatively easy to see that (2) has rounded solutions:  $r_1 = -1.8271$ ,  $r_2 = -1.3383$ ,  $r_3 = 0.2091$ ,  $r_4 = 1.9563$ .

Now we seek pairs of these solutions that have recognizable sums and products. Fibonacci fans are certainly familiar with the number  $\alpha = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2 = 1.6180\dots$ . Upon noting that  $r_2 + r_4 \approx 0.618 \approx \alpha^{-1}$  and  $r_2 r_4 \approx -2.618 \approx -\alpha^2$ , we suspect that  $r_2$  and  $r_4$  are solutions of

$$x^2 - \alpha^{-1}x - \alpha^2 = 0. \quad (3)$$

Long division, using familiar properties of powers of  $\alpha$ , confirms that suspicion as fact, since

$$x^4 + x^3 - 4x^2 - 4x + 1 = (x^2 - \alpha^{-1}x - \alpha^2)(x^2 + \alpha x - \alpha^{-2}).$$

Then we can verify that  $r_2$  and  $r_4$  are indeed solutions of (3), namely,

$$x = \frac{\alpha^{-1} \pm \sqrt{\alpha^{-2} + 4\alpha^2}}{2} = \frac{\alpha - 1 \pm \sqrt{6 + 3\alpha}}{2} = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5} \pm \sqrt{30 + 6\sqrt{5}}}{4}.$$

Also,  $r_1$  and  $r_3$  are solutions of  $x^2 + \alpha x - \alpha^{-2} = 0$ , namely,

$$x = \frac{-\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 + 4\alpha^{-2}}}{2} = \frac{-\alpha \pm \sqrt{9 - 3\alpha}}{2} = \frac{-1 - \sqrt{5} \pm \sqrt{30 - 6\sqrt{5}}}{4}.$$

(Incidentally, the published solution was incorrect in that  $r_1$  and  $r_3$  were each off by 0.5, because of an incorrect sign in the numerator.)

### REFERENCE

1. Paul Bruckman. Advanced Problem H-335. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 1 (1982):93.

◆◆◆◆

# ON THE REDUCTION OF A LINEAR RECURRENCE OF ORDER $r$

DORIN ANDRICA

"Babes-Bolyai" University, 3400 Cluj-Napoca, Romania

SERBAN BUZETEANU

University of Bucharest, 7000 Bucharest, Romania

(Submitted August 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

J. R. Bastida shows in his paper [1] that, if  $u \in R$ ,  $u > 1$ , and  $(x_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is a sequence given by

$$x_{n+1} = ux_n + \sqrt{(u^2 - 1)(x_n^2 - x_0^2) + (x_1 - ux_0)^2}, \quad n \geq 0, \quad (1)$$

then  $x_{n+2} = 2ux_{n+1} - x_n$ ,  $n \geq 0$ . So, if the numbers  $u$ ,  $x_0$ , and  $x_1$  are integers, it results that  $x_n$  is an integer for any  $n \geq 0$ .

Bastida and DeLeon [2] establish sufficient conditions for the numbers  $u$ ,  $t$ ,  $x_0$ , and  $x_1$  such that the linear recurrence

$$x_{n+2} = 2ux_{n+1} - tx_n \quad (2)$$

can be reduced to a relation of form (1), between  $x_n$  and  $x_{n+1}$ . Consequently, the relation's two consecutive terms of Fibonacci, Lucas, and Pell sequences are given in [2].

S. Roy [6] finds this relation for the Fibonacci sequence using hyperbolic functions.

In this paper we shall prove that if a sequence  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  satisfies a linear recurrence of order  $r \geq 2$ , then there exists a polynomial relation between any  $r$  consecutive terms. This shows that the linear recurrence of order  $r$  was reduced to a nonlinear recurrence of order  $r - 1$ .

From a practical point of view, for  $r \geq 3$ , expressing  $x_n$  in the function of  $x_{n-1}$ , ...,  $x_{n-r+1}$  is difficult, because we must solve an algebraic equation of degree  $\geq 3$  and choose the "good solution."

If  $r = 2$ , we can do this in many important cases. An application of this case is a generalization of the result given in [3].

## 2. THE MAIN RESULT

Let  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence given by the linear recurrence of order  $r$ ,

$$x_n = \sum_{k=1}^r \alpha_k x_{n-r+k-1}, \quad n \geq r+1, \quad x_i = \alpha_i, \quad 1 \leq i \leq r, \quad (3)$$

where  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$  and  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$  are given real numbers (they can also be complex numbers or elements of an arbitrary commutative field). Suppose  $\alpha_1 \neq 0$ .

# ON THE REDUCTION OF A LINEAR RECURRENCE OF ORDER $r$

For  $n \geq r$ , we consider the determinant

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} x_{n-r+1} & x_{n-r+2} & \cdots & x_{n-1} & x_n \\ x_{n-r+2} & x_{n-r+3} & \cdots & x_n & x_{n+1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ x_{n-1} & x_n & \cdots & x_{n+r-3} & x_{n+r-2} \\ x_n & x_{n+1} & \cdots & x_{n+r-2} & x_{n+r-1} \end{vmatrix} \quad (4)$$

and then prove the following theorem.

Theorem 1. Let  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence given by (3) and let  $D_n$  be given by (4). Then, for any  $n \geq r$ , we have the  $r$  relation

$$D_n = (-1)^{(r-1)(n-r)} \alpha_1^{n-r} D_r \quad (5)$$

Proof: Following the method of [4], [5], and [7] (for  $r = 2$ ), we introduce the matrix

$$A_n = \begin{bmatrix} x_{n-r+1} & x_{n-r+2} & \cdots & x_{n-1} & x_n \\ x_{n-r+2} & x_{n-r+3} & \cdots & x_n & x_{n+1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ x_{n-1} & x_n & \cdots & x_{n+r-3} & x_{n+r-2} \\ x_n & x_{n+1} & \cdots & x_{n+r-2} & x_{n+r-1} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (6)$$

It is easy to see that

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 & \alpha_4 & \cdots & \alpha_{r-2} & \alpha_{r-1} & \alpha_r \end{bmatrix} A_n = A_{n+1}, \quad (7)$$

so that

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 & \alpha_4 & \cdots & \alpha_{r-2} & \alpha_{r-1} & \alpha_r \end{bmatrix} A_r = A_n. \quad (8)$$



# ON THE REDUCTION OF A LINEAR RECURRENCE OF ORDER $r$

Passing to determinants in (8), we obtain

$$((-1)^{r-1}\alpha_1)^{n-r}D_r = D_n \quad \text{for } n \geq r;$$

that is, the relation (5) is true.

**Theorem 2.** Let  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be the sequence given by the linear recurrence (3). There exists a polynomial function of degree  $r$ ,  $F_r: R^r \rightarrow R$ , such that the relation

$$F_r(x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots, x_{n-r+1}) = (-1)^{(r-1)(n-r)} \alpha_1^{n-r} F_r(\alpha_r, \alpha_{r-1}, \dots, \alpha_1) \quad (9)$$

is true for every  $n \geq r$ .

**Proof:** Observe that, from the recurrence (3), we can compute the value of  $D_r$  knowing  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ . Also, from the recurrence (3), we can express successively all elements of  $D_n$  as a function of the terms  $x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots, x_{n-r+1}$  of the sequence  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$ . Thus there exists a polynomial function of degree  $r$ ,  $F_r: R^r \rightarrow R$  such that the relation (9) is true.

If we suppose that the equation

$$F_r(x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots, x_{n-r+1}) = (-1)^{(r-1)(n-r)} \alpha_1^{n-r} F_r(\alpha_r, \dots, \alpha_1)$$

can be resolved with respect to  $x_n$ , we find that  $x_n$  depends only on the terms  $x_{n-1}, x_{n-2}, \dots, x_{n-r+1}$ .

If this is possible, the expression of  $x_n$  is, in general, very complicated.

When  $r = 2$ , we obtain

$$F_2(x, y) = x^2 - \alpha_2 xy - \alpha_1 y^2, \quad (10)$$

and it results that, for the sequence  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$  given by

$$x_n = \alpha_1 x_{n-2} + \alpha_2 x_{n-1}, \quad n \geq 3, \quad x_1 = \alpha_1, \quad x_2 = \alpha_2, \quad (11)$$

the relation  $F_2(x_n, x_{n-1}) = (-1)^n \alpha_1^{n-2} F_2(\alpha_2, \alpha_1)$  holds. The last relation is the first result of [2], where it was proved by mathematical induction. If we write this relation explicitly, we obtain

$$(2x_n - \alpha_2 x_{n-1})^2 = (\alpha_2^2 + 4\alpha_1)x_{n-1}^2 + 4(-1)^{n-1} \alpha_1^{n-2} (\alpha_1 \alpha_1^2 + \alpha_2 \alpha_1 \alpha_2 - \alpha_2^2). \quad (12)$$

From the relation (12), under some supplementary conditions concerning the sequence  $(x_n)_{n \geq 1}$ , we can express  $x_n$  in terms of  $x_{n-1}$ .

Again, from (12), it follows that if the sequence satisfies (11), where  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ , then for any  $n \geq 3$ ,

$$(\alpha_2^2 + 4\alpha_1)x_{n-1}^2 + 4(-1)^{n-1} \alpha_1^{n-2} (\alpha_1 \alpha_1^2 + \alpha_2 \alpha_1 \alpha_2 - \alpha_2^2)$$

is a square. This result is an extension of [3].

In the particular case  $r = 3$ , after elementary calculation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} F_3(x, y, z) = & -x^3 - (\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \alpha_3)y^3 - \alpha_1^2 z^3 + 2\alpha_3 x^2 y + \alpha_2 x^2 z \\ & - (\alpha_2^2 + \alpha_1 \alpha_3)y^2 z - (\alpha_3^2 - \alpha_2)xy^2 \\ & - \alpha_1 \alpha_3 xz^2 - 2\alpha_1 \alpha_2 yz^2 + (3\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 \alpha_3)xyz. \end{aligned}$$

So from relation (9), we get that, for the linear recurrence

$$x_n = \alpha_1 x_{n-3} + \alpha_2 x_{n-2} + \alpha_3 x_{n-1}, \quad n \geq 4, \quad x_1 = \alpha_1, \quad x_2 = \alpha_2, \quad x_3 = \alpha_3, \quad (13)$$

the relation  $F_3(x_n, x_{n-1}, x_{n-2}) = \alpha_1^{n-3} F_3(\alpha_3, \alpha_2, \alpha_1)$  is true.

# ON THE REDUCTION OF A LINEAR RECURRENCE OF ORDER $r$

## REFERENCES

1. J. R. Bastida. "Quadric Properties of a Linearly Recurrent Sequence." *Proceedings of the Tenth Southeastern Conference on Combinatorics, Graph Theory and Computing*. Winnipeg, Canada: Utilitas Mathematica, 1979.
2. J. R. Bastida & M. J. DeLeon. "A Quadratic Property of Certain Linearly Recurrent Sequences." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 2 (1981):144-46.
3. E. Just. Problem E 2367. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 7 (1972):772.
4. D. E. Knuth. *The Art of Computer Programming*. Vol. I: *Fundamental Algorithms*. Boston: Addison-Wesley, 1975.
5. R. McLaughlin. "Sequences—Some Properties by Matrix Methods." *The Math. Gaz.* 64, no. 430 (1980):281-82.
6. S. Roy. "What's the Next Fibonacci Number?" *The Math. Gaz.* 64, no. 425 (1980):189-90.
7. J. R. Sylvester. "Fibonacci Properties by Matrix Methods." *The Math. Gaz.* 63, no. 425 (1979):188-91.

◆◆◆◆

## ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Edited by  
A. P. HILLMAN

Assistant Editors  
GLORIA C. PADILLA and CHARLES R. WALL

Please send all communications regarding *ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS* to PROFESSOR A. P. HILLMAN; 709 SOLANO DR., S.E.; ALBUQUERQUE, NM 87108. Each problem or solution should be on a separate sheet (or sheets). Preference will be given to those typed with double spacing in the format used below. Proposed problems should be accompanied by their solutions. Solutions should be received within four months of the publication date.

### DEFINITIONS

The Fibonacci numbers  $F_n$  and Lucas numbers  $L_n$  satisfy

$$F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n, \quad F_0 = 0, \quad F_1 = 1,$$

and

$$L_{n+2} = L_{n+1} + L_n, \quad L_0 = 2, \quad L_1 = 1.$$

Also,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  designate the roots  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$  and  $(1 - \sqrt{5})/2$ , respectively, of  $x^2 - x - 1 = 0$ .

### PROBLEMS PROPOSED IN THIS ISSUE

B-538 Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Prove that  $\sqrt{5}g^n = gL_n + L_{n-1}$ , where  $g$  is the golden ratio  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ .

B-539 Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Let  $g = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$  and show that

$$\left[1 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g^{-3i}\right] \left[1 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (-1)^i g^{-3i}\right] = 1.$$

B-540 Proposed by A. B. Patel, V. S. Patel College of Arts & Sciences, Bilimora, India

For  $n = 2, 3, \dots$ , prove that

$$F_{n-1}F_nF_{n+1}L_{n-1}L_nL_{n+1}$$

is not a perfect square.

B-541 Proposed by Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, student, Berlin, Germany

Show that  $P_{n+3} + P_{n+1} + P_n \equiv 3(-1)^n L_n \pmod{9}$ , where the  $P_n$  are the Pell numbers defined by  $P_0 = 0$ ,  $P_1 = 1$ , and

$$P_{n+2} = 2P_{n+1} + P_n \quad \text{for } n \text{ in } \mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}.$$

# ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

**B-542** Proposed by Ioan Tomescu, University of Bucharest, Romania

Find the sequence satisfying the recurrence relation

$$u(n) = 3u(n-1) - u(n-2) - 2u(n-3) + 1$$

and the initial conditions  $u(0) = u(1) = u(2) = 0$ .

**B-543** Proposed by P. Rubio, Dragados Y Construcciones, Madrid, Spain

Let  $a_0 = a_1 = 1$  and  $a_{n+1} = a_n + a_{n-1}$  for  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^+ = \{1, 2, \dots\}$ . Find a simple formula for

$$G(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k!} x^k.$$

## SOLUTIONS

### Same Parity

**B-514** Proposed by Philip L. Mana, Albuquerque, N.M.

Prove that  $\binom{n}{5} + \binom{n+4}{5} \equiv n \pmod{2}$  for  $n = 5, 6, 7, \dots$ .

*Solution by L. Cseh, student, Cluj, Romania*

It is well known that  $\binom{n}{r} = \binom{n-1}{r} + \binom{n-1}{r-1}$ , for every  $n > r$ . Using this successively, we obtain:

$$\binom{n+4}{5} = \binom{n}{5} + 4\binom{n}{4} + 6\binom{n}{3} + 4\binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{1}, \text{ for } n \geq 5.$$

From here:

$$\binom{n}{5} + \binom{n+4}{5} = 2\binom{n}{5} + 4\binom{n}{4} + 6\binom{n}{3} + 4\binom{n}{2} + n,$$

and so

$$\binom{n}{5} + \binom{n+4}{5} \equiv n \pmod{2} \text{ for } n = 5, 6, \dots$$

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, Adina Di Porto and Piero Filipponi, L. A. G. Dresel, C. Georgiou, Lawrence D. Gould, F. T. Howard, Walther Janous, M. S. Klamkin, H. Klauser, L. Kuipers, Graham Lord, Vania D. Mascioni, Imre Merenyi, George N. Philippou, Bob Prielipp, H.-J. Seiffert, Sahib Singh, Paul Smith, J. Suck, W. R. Utz, and the proposer.

### Disguised Lucas Number

**B-515** Proposed by Walter Blumberg, Coral Springs, FL

Let  $Q_0 = 3$ , and for  $n \geq 0$ ,  $Q_{n+1} = 2Q_n^2 + 2Q_n - 1$ . Prove that  $2Q_n + 1$  is a Lucas number.

*Solution by C. Georgiou, University of Patras, Greece*

We show that  $2Q_n + 1 = L_2n + 2$ . Let  $R_n = 2Q_n + 1$ . Then  $R_0 = 7$ , and for  $n \geq 0$ ,

$$R_{n+1} = R_n^2 - 2. \quad (*)$$

## ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Now, using the identity  $L_{4n} = L_{2n}^2 - 2$ , it is easily verified that  $R_n = L_{2n} + 2$  is a solution of (\*). Since  $R_0 = 7 = L_2 + 2$ ,  $R_n = L_{2n} + 2$  is the unique solution of (\*).

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, Laszlo Cseh, Adina Di Porto and Piero Filipponi, L. A. G. Dresel, Herta T. Freitag, Walther Janous, M. S. Klamkin, L. Kuipers, Graham Lord, Vania D. Mascioni, Imre Merenyi, George N. Philippou, Bob Prielipp, H.-J. Seiffert, A. G. Shannon, Sahib Singh, P. Smith, Lawrence Somer, J. Suck, M. Wachtel, Gregory Wulczyn, David Zeitlin, and the proposer.

### Pell Equation Multiples of 36

**B-516** Proposed by Walter Blumberg, Coral Springs, FL

Let  $U$  and  $V$  be positive integers such that  $U^2 - 5V^2 = 1$ . Prove that  $UV$  is divisible by 36.

*Solution by Walther Janous, Ursulinengymnasium, Innsbruck, Austria*

From the theory of Pellian equations, it is very well known that starting from the minimal solution  $u_0 = 9$ ,  $v_0 = 4$ , all solutions in natural numbers can be obtained via the recursion  $u_{n+1} + v_{n+1}\sqrt{5} = (u_n + v_n\sqrt{5})(9 + 4\sqrt{5})$ . Thus, the claim  $36|UV$  can be shown by induction:  $36|u_0v_0 = 36$ . Assume that  $36|u_nv_n$ . Since

$$u_{n+1}v_{n+1} = (9u_n + 20v_n)(4u_n + 9v_n) = 36(u_n^2 + 5v_n^2) + 161u_nv_n,$$

it follows at once that  $36|u_{n+1}v_{n+1}$ .

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, Laszlo Cseh, Adina Di Porto and Piero Filipponi, L. A. G. Dresel, C. Georghiou, Fuchin He, M. S. Klamkin, H. Klausner, Edwin M. Klein, L. Kuipers, Imre Merenyi, Bob Prielipp, H.-J. Seiffert, A. G. Shannon, Sahib Singh, P. Smith, Lawrence Somer, J. Suck, W. R. Utz, M. Wachtel, Gregory Wulczyn, and the proposer.

### Square Sum of Adjacent Factorials

**B-517** Proposed by Charles R. Wall, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC

Find all  $n$  such that  $n! + (n+1)! + (n+2)!$  is the square of an integer.

*Solution by Paul S. Bruckman, Fair Oaks, CA*

Let  $\theta_n = n! + (n+1)! + (n+2)!$ ; then

$$\theta_n = n!(1 + n + 1 + (n+1)(n+2)) = n!(n+2)^2.$$

We see that  $\theta_n$  is a square iff  $n!$  is a square. Note that  $\theta_0 = 1 + 1 + 2 = 2^2$  and  $\theta_1 = 1 + 2 + 6 = 3^2$ .

By Bertrand's Postulate, for any  $n \geq 1$ , there exists a prime  $p$  such that  $n < p \leq 2n$ . This, in turn, implies that for any  $n \geq 2$ , there exists a prime  $p$  such that  $p \leq n < 2p$ . Hence, if  $n \geq 2$ ,  $p|n!$  but  $kp \nmid n!$  for all  $k \geq 2$ . In particular,  $p^2 \nmid n!$ . This shows that  $n!$  cannot be a square if  $n \geq 2$ . Thus, the only values of  $n$  for which  $\theta_n$  is square are  $n = 0$  and  $n = 1$ .

Also solved by Laszlo Cseh, L. A. G. Dresel, Adina Di Porto and Piero Filipponi, C. Georghiou, Lawrence D. Gould, Fuchin He, Walther Janous, M. S. Klamkin,

## ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

*Edwin M. Klein, L. Kuipers, Graham Lord, Vania D. Mascioni, Imre Merenyi, George N. Philippou, Bob Prielipp, Sahib Singh, Paul Smith, J. Suck, Gregory Wulczyn, H. Klauser, and the proposer.*

### Fibonacci Inradius

**B-518** Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Let the measures of the legs of a right triangle be

$$F_{n-1}F_{n+2} \quad \text{and} \quad 2F_nF_{n+1}.$$

What feature of the triangle has  $F_{n-1}F_n$  as its measure?

*Solution by L. A. G. Dresel, University of Reading, England*

The sides of the right-angled triangle are given as

$$a = F_{n-1}F_{n+2} = (F_{n+1} - F_n)(F_{n+1} + F_n) = F_{n+1}^2 - F_n^2,$$

$$b = 2F_nF_{n+1};$$

hence,

$$a^2 + b^2 = (F_{n+1}^2 - F_n^2)^2 + 4F_n^2F_{n+1}^2 = (F_{n+1}^2 + F_n^2)^2$$

so that the third side is  $c = F_{n+1}^2 + F_n^2$ , and

$$a + b + c = 2F_{n+1}^2 + 2F_nF_{n+1} = 2F_{n+1}F_{n+2},$$

while  $F_{n-1}F_n(a + b + c) = ab =$  twice the area of the triangle. It follows that  $F_{n-1}F_n$  measures the radius  $r$  of the incircle, that is, the circle inscribed in the triangle and touching the three sides.

*Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, Laszlo Cseh, Adina Di Porto and Piero Filipponi, C. Georghiou, Lawrence D. Gould, Walther Janous, M. S. Klamkin, H. Klauser, L. Kuipers, Vania D. Mascioni, Imre Merenyi, Bob Prielipp, Sahib Singh, Lawrence Somer, J. Suck, Gregory Wulczyn, and the proposer.*

### Lucas Inradius

**B-519** Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Do as in B-518 with each Fibonacci number replaced by the corresponding Lucas number.

*Solution by L. A. G. Dresel, University of Reading, England*

Since the proof for B-518 given above uses only the recurrence relation for the Fibonacci numbers  $F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1}$ , etc., the corresponding result replacing each  $F_k$  by  $L_k$  can be proved in exactly the same way.

*Also solved by the solvers of B-518 and the proposer.*

◆◆◆◆

## ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Edited by  
RAYMOND E. WHITNEY

Please send all communications concerning ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS to RAYMOND E. WHITNEY, MATHEMATICS DEPARTMENT, LOCK HAVEN UNIVERSITY, LOCK HAVEN, PA 17745. This department especially welcomes problems believed to be new or extending old results. Proposers should submit solutions or other information that will assist the editor. To facilitate their consideration, all solutions should be submitted on separate signed sheets within two months after publication of the problems.

### PROBLEMS PROPOSED IN THIS ISSUE

H-381 Proposed by Dejan M. Petković, Niš, Yugoslavia

Let  $N$  be the set of all natural numbers and let  $m \in N$ . Show that

$$(i) \quad \zeta(2m-2) = \frac{(-)^m \bar{u}^{2m-2} (m-1)}{(2m-1)!} + \sum_{i=2}^{m-1} \frac{(-)^i \bar{u}^{2i-2}}{(2i-1)!} \cdot \zeta(2m-2i), \quad m \geq 2,$$

$$(ii) \quad \beta(2m-1) = \sum_{i=1}^{m-1} \frac{(-)^i \bar{u}^{2i}}{2^{2i} (2i)!} \cdot \beta(2m-2i-1), \quad m \geq 2,$$

$$(iii) \quad \zeta(2m) = \frac{2^{2m}}{2^{2m}-1} \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \frac{(-)^i \bar{u}^{2i+1}}{2^{2i+1} (2i+1)!} \cdot \beta(2m-2i-1), \quad m \geq 1,$$

where

$$\zeta(m) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{-m}, \quad m \geq 2, \text{ are Riemann zeta numbers}$$

and

$$\beta(m) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-)^{n-1} (2n-1)^{-m}, \quad m \geq 1.$$

H-382 Proposed by Andreas N. Philippou, Patras, Greece

For each fixed positive integer  $k$ , define the sequence of polynomials  $A_{n+1}^{(k)}(p)$  by

$$A_{n+1}^{(k)}(p) = \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_k} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k} \left( \frac{1-p}{p} \right)^{n_1 + \dots + n_k} \quad (n \geq 0, -\infty < p < \infty), \quad (1)$$

where the summation is taken over all nonnegative integers  $n_1, \dots, n_k$  such that  $n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n+1$ . Show that

$$A_{n+1}^{(k)}(p) \leq (1-p)p^{-(n+1)}(1-p^k)^{[n/k]} \quad (n \geq k-1, 0 < p < 1), \quad (2)$$

where  $[n/k]$  denotes the greatest integer in  $(n/k)$ .

It may be noted that (2) reduces to

$$F_n^{(k)} \leq 2^n \left( \frac{2^k - 1}{2^k} \right)^{[n/k]} \quad (n \geq k-1) \quad (3)$$

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

and

$$F_n \leq 2^n (3/4)^{[n/2]} \quad (n \geq 1), \quad (4)$$

where  $\{F_n^{(k)}\}_{n=0}^\infty$  and  $\{F_n\}_{n=0}^\infty$  denote the Fibonacci sequence of order  $k$  and the usual Fibonacci sequence, respectively, if  $p = 1/2$  and  $p = 1/2$ ,  $k = 2$ .

## References

1. J. A. Fuchs. Problem B-39. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 2, no. 2 (1964):154.
2. A. N. Philippou. Problem H-322. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 1 (1981): 93.

H-383 Proposed by Clark Kimberling, Evansville, IN

For any  $x > 0$ , let

$$c_1 = 1, \quad c_2 = x, \quad \text{and} \quad c_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n c_i c_{n-i} \quad \text{for } n = 3, 4, \dots$$

Prove or disprove that there exists  $y > 0$  such that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} y^n c_n = 1$ .

H-384 Proposed by Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, Berlin, Germany

Show that for  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ ,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k)!} \prod_{j=0}^{k-1} \left[ \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 - j^2 \right] = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2} F_{2n+1}$$

## SOLUTIONS

### Waiting Again

H-358 Proposed by Andreas N. Philippou, University of Patras, Greece  
(Vol. 21, no. 3, August, 1983)

For any fixed integers  $k \geq 1$  and  $r \geq 1$ , set

$$f_{n+1, r}^{(k)} = \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_k} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k + r - 1}{n_1, \dots, n_k, r - 1}, \quad n \geq 0,$$

where the summation is over all nonnegative integers  $n_1, \dots, n_k$  satisfying the relation  $n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n$ . Show that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (f_{n+1, r}^{(k)} / 2^n) = 2^{rk}.$$

You may note that the present problem reduces to H-322(c) for  $r = 1$  (and  $k \geq 2$ ), because of Theorem 2.1 of Philippou and Muwafi [1]. In addition, the present problem includes as special cases [for  $k = 1$ ,  $r = 1$ , and  $k = 1$ ,  $r (\geq 1)$ ] the following infinite sums; namely,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (1/2^n) = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \binom{n+r-1}{n} / 2^n \right] = 2^r.$$

## Reference

1. A. N. Philippou & A. A. Muwafi. "Waiting for the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Consecutive Success and the Fibonacci Sequence of Order  $K$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 1 (1982):28-32.



# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

*Solution by the proposer*

Set

$$f_{n+1, r}^{(k)}(p) = \sum_{\substack{n_1, \dots, n_k \ni \\ n_1, 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n}} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k + r - 1}{n_1, \dots, n_k, r - 1} p^n \left( \frac{1-p}{p} \right)^{n_1 + \dots + n_k} \quad (1)$$

$(n \geq 0, -\infty < p < \infty).$

It follows, by means of the transformation  $n_i = m_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq k$ ) and

$$n = m + \sum_{i=1}^k (i-1)m_i,$$

that

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f_{n+1, r}^{(k)}(p) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{\substack{n_1, \dots, n_k \ni \\ n_1, 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n}} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k + r - 1}{n_1 + \dots + n_k} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k} p^n \left( \frac{1-p}{p} \right)^{n_1 + \dots + n_k} \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \binom{m+r-1}{m} \left( \frac{1-p}{p} \right)^m \sum_{\substack{m_1, \dots, m_k \ni \\ m_1 + \dots + m_k = m}} \binom{m}{m_1, \dots, m_k} p^{m_1 + 2m_2 + \dots + km_k} \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \binom{m+r-1}{m} \left( \frac{1-p}{p} \right)^m (p + p^2 + \dots + p^k)^m, \text{ by the multinomial theorem,} \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (-1)^m \binom{-r}{m} (1-p^k)^m = (1 - (1-p^k))^{-r}, \text{ for } |1-p^k| < 1, \\ & \hspace{15em} \text{by the binomial theorem,} \\ &= p^{-kr}, \text{ for } k \text{ odd and } 0 < p < \sqrt[k]{2}, \text{ or } k \text{ even and } -\sqrt[k]{2} < p < \sqrt[k]{2}. \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

For  $p = 1/2$ , (1) and (2) establish the problem. For  $r = 1$ , (1) and (2) show H-348.

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman.

## Zetanacci

H-359 Proposed by Paul S. Bruckman, Carmichael, CA  
(Vol. 21, no. 3, August 1983)

Define the "Zetanacci" numbers  $Z(n)$  as follows:

$$Z(n) = \prod_{p^e \parallel n} F_{e+1}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \text{ [with } Z(1) = 1]. \quad (1)$$

For example,  $Z(n) = 1$ ,  $n = 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, \dots$ ;  $Z(n) = 2$ ,  $n = 4, 9, 12, 18, 20, \dots$ ;  $Z(8) = 3$ ,  $Z(16) = 5$ ,  $Z(135,000) = Z(2^3 3^3 5^4) = 45$ , and so forth.

(A) Show that the (Dirichlet) generating function of the Zetanacci numbers is given by:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Z(n)n^{-s} = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s} - p^{-2s})^{-1},$$

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

(B) Show that

$$\prod_p (1 - p^{-s} - p^{-2s}) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu(P(n)) \cdot |\mu(n/P(n))| \cdot n^{-s},$$

where  $\mu$  is the Möbius function and

$$P(n) = \prod_{p|n} p \text{ [with } P(1) = 1].$$

*Solution by C. Georgiou, University of Patras, Greece*

The solution of the problem is based on the following known proposition [see, e.g., G. Polya & G. Szego, *Problems and Theorems in Analysis II* (Springer-Verlag, 1976), pp. 121, 312]:

"Let  $f(n)$  be a multiplicative arithmetical function (m.a.f.). Then we have

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)n^{-s} = \prod_p (1 + f(p)p^{-s} + f(p^2)p^{-2s} + f(p^3)p^{-3s} + \dots) \quad (*)$$

and conversely, if (\*) holds, then  $f(n)$  is a m.a.f."

(A) From the definition, we note that  $Z(n)$  is a m.a.f. and  $Z(p^k) = F_{k+1}$  for every prime  $p$ . Therefore, from (\*), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} Z(n)n^{-s} &= \prod_p (1 + F_2p^{-s} + F_3p^{-2s} + F_4p^{-3s} + \dots) \\ &= \prod_p (1 - p^{-s} - p^{-2s})^{-1}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that the (ordinary) generating function of the sequence  $\{F_{n+1}\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$  is  $f(x) = (1 - x - x^2)^{-1}$ .

(B) We have, according to (\*),

$$\begin{aligned} \prod_p (1 - p^{-s} - p^{-2s}) &= \prod_p (1 + f(p)p^{-s} + f(p^2)p^{-2s} + f(p^3)p^{-3s} + \dots) \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n)n^{-s}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $f(n)$  is a m.a.f. and  $f(1) = 1$ ,  $f(p) = -1$ ,  $f(p^2) = -1$ , and  $f(p^k) = 0$  for every prime  $p$  and  $k > 2$ . Thus the problem reduces to that of finding a m.a.f.  $f(n)$  with the above-stated properties. By choosing  $f(n)$  such that  $f(1) = 1$  and

$$f(p^k) = \mu(p) \cdot |\mu(p^{k-1})|,$$

where  $\mu$  is the Möbius function, for every prime  $p$  and  $k \geq 1$  the above requirements are satisfied. If  $n = p_{m_1}^{n_1} p_{m_2}^{n_2} \dots p_{m_k}^{n_k}$ , then since  $\mu$  is a m.a.f., we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) &= \mu(p_{m_1}, p_{m_2}, \dots, p_{m_k}) \cdot |\mu(n/(p_{m_1} p_{m_2} \dots p_{m_k}))| \\ &= \mu(p(n)) \cdot |\mu(n/P(n))| \end{aligned}$$

from the definition of  $P(n)$ , and this proves (B).

Also solved by L. Kuipers and the proposer.

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Say A

H-360 Proposed by M. Wachtel, Zurich, Switzerland  
(Vol. 21, no. 4, November, 1983)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Let: } F_n F_{n+1} + F_{n+2}^2 &= A_1 \\ F_{n+1} F_{n+2} + F_{n+3}^2 &= A_2 \\ F_{n+2} F_{n+3} + F_{n+4}^2 &= A_3\end{aligned}$$

Show that:

1. no integral divisor of  $A$  is congruent to 3 or 7 modulo 10,
2.  $A_1 A_2 + 1$ , as well as  $A_1 A_3 + 1$ , are products of two consecutive integers.

Solution by Paul S. Bruckman, Fair Oaks, CA

We make a change in notation. Let

$$B_n = F_n F_{n+1} + F_{n+2}^2 \quad (1)$$

$$C_n = B_n B_{n+1} + 1, \quad (2)$$

$$D_n = B_n B_{n+2} + 1, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (3)$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}B_n &= F_n F_{n+1} + F_{n+3} F_{n+1} + (-1)^{n+1} = F_{n+1} (F_{n+3} + F_n) - (-1)^n \\ &= F_{n+1} (F_{n+2} + F_{n+1} + F_{n+2} - F_{n+1}) - (-1)^n,\end{aligned}$$

or

$$B_n = 2F_{n+1} F_{n+2} - (-1)^n. \quad (4)$$

Proof of Part 1: It is sufficient to prove that no prime  $p$  with  $p \equiv \pm 3 \pmod{10}$  divides  $B_n$  (for all  $n$ ), since any number congruent to 3 or 7 (mod 10) divisible by such a prime. Note that

$$B_n = F_n F_{n+1} + (F_{n+1} + F_n)^2 = F_{n+1}^2 + 3F_{n+1} F_n + F_n^2,$$

or upon factorization:

$$B_n = (F_{n+1} + \alpha^2 F_n)(F_{n+1} + \beta^2 F_n), \quad (5)$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the usual Fibonacci constants.

Suppose  $p$  is any prime with  $p \equiv \pm 3 \pmod{10}$ . Then,  $(5/p) = (p/5) = -1$ . According to the calculus of "complex residues" (see [1]), we can define

$$\alpha \equiv 2^{-1}(1 + \sqrt{5}) \quad \text{and} \quad \beta \equiv 2^{-1}(1 - \sqrt{5}) \pmod{p}$$

as "complex residues" and manipulate such quantities algebraically in a manner analogous to that employed with ordinary complex numbers. In this proof, we assume that all congruences are modulo  $p$  and omit the notation " $\pmod{p}$ " where no confusion is likely to arise.

Assume  $B_n \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . Then one of the two factors indicated in (5) must vanish (mod  $p$ ). If  $F_{n+1} + \alpha^2 F_n \equiv 0$ , then  $\alpha^{n+1} - \beta^{n+1} + \alpha^{n+2} - \beta^{n+2} \equiv 0$ , implying

$$\alpha^{n+1}(1 + \alpha) \equiv \beta^{n+2}(\beta^3 + 1) \Rightarrow \alpha^{n+3} \equiv 2\beta^n \Rightarrow \alpha^{2n+3} \equiv 2(-1)^n$$

and

$$\beta^{2n+3} \equiv -2^{-1}(-1)^n.$$

Hence,

$$F_{2n+3} = 5^{-\frac{1}{2}}(\alpha^{2n+3} - \beta^{2n+3}) \equiv (2 + 2^{-1})5^{-\frac{1}{2}}(-1)^n \equiv 2^{-1}5^{\frac{1}{2}}(-1)^n.$$

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Similarly, if  $F_{n+1} + \beta^2 F_n \equiv 0$ , then  $F_{2n+3} = -2^{-1} 5^{\frac{1}{2}} (-1)^n$ . Hence,  $B_n \equiv 0$  implies  $F_{2n+3} \equiv \pm 2^{-1} 5^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . However, this is impossible, since  $F_{2n+3}$  is "real," while  $5^{\frac{1}{2}}$ , and thus  $\pm 2^{-1} 5^{\frac{1}{2}}$  are "imaginary" (mod  $p$ ). This contradiction establishes that  $B_n \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , and hence the desired result.

Proof of Part 2: Using (2) and (4),

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= (2F_{n+1}F_{n+2} - (-1)^n)(2F_{n+2}F_{n+3} + (-1)^n) + 1 \\ &= 4F_{n+1}F_{n+2}^2F_{n+3} - 2(-1)^n F_{n+2}(F_{n+3} - F_{n+1}) \\ &= 2F_{n+2}^2(2F_{n+1}F_{n+3} - (-1)^n) \\ &= 2F_{n+2}^2\{2(F_{n+2}^2 - (-1)^{n+1}) - (-1)^n\}, \end{aligned}$$

or

$$C_n = 2F_{n+2}^2(2F_{n+2}^2 + (-1)^n). \quad (6)$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned} D_n &= (2F_{n+1}F_{n+2} - (-1)^n)(2F_{n+3}F_{n+4} - (-1)^n) + 1 \\ &= 4F_{n+1}F_{n+2}F_{n+3}F_{n+4} - 2(-1)^n(F_{n+1}F_{n+2} + F_{n+3}F_{n+4}) + 2 \\ &= 4F_{n+2}^2F_{n+3}(F_{n+3} - F_{n+2})(F_{n+3} + F_{n+2}) \\ &\quad - 2(-1)^n\{F_{n+2}(F_{n+3} - F_{n+2}) + F_{n+3}(F_{n+3} + F_{n+2})\} + 2 \\ &= 4F_{n+2}^2F_{n+3}(F_{n+3}^2 - F_{n+2}^2) - 2(-1)^n(2F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - F_{n+2}^2 + F_{n+3}^2) + 2 \\ &= (F_{n+3}^2 - F_{n+2}^2)(4F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - 2(-1)^n) - (-1)^n(4F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - 2(-1)^n) \\ &= (F_{n+3}^2 - F_{n+2}^2 - (-1)^n)(4F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - 2(-1)^n) \\ &= 2(F_{n+3}^2 - F_{n+2}F_{n+1})(2F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - (-1)^n) \\ &= 2F_{n+3}(F_{n+3} - F_{n+1})(2F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - (-1)^n), \end{aligned}$$

or

$$D_n = 2F_{n+2}F_{n+3}(2F_{n+2}F_{n+3} - (-1)^n). \quad (7)$$

We see from (6) and (7) that  $C_n$  and  $D_n$  are equal to products of two consecutive integers. Q.E.D.

## Reference

1. Paul S. Bruckman. "Some Divisibility Properties of Generalized Fibonacci Sequences." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 17, no. 1 (1979):42-49.

Also solved by L. Kuipers and the proposer.

## Pell-Mell

H-361 Proposed by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., deceased  
(Vol. 21, no. 4, November, 1983)

Let  $H_n = P_{2n}/2$ ,  $n > 0$ , where  $P_n$  denotes the  $n^{\text{th}}$  Pell number. Show that

$$H_m + H_n = P_k$$

$$H_m + H_n = P_k + P_{k-1}$$

if and only if  $m = n + 1$ , where  $k = 2n + 1$  and

$$P_{2n+2}/2 + P_{2n}/2 = ((2P_{2n+1} + P_{2n}) + P_{2n})/2 = P_{2n+1} + P_{2n}.$$

Editorial Note: Refer to the January 1972 article on the Generalized Zeckendorf Theorem for Pell Numbers.

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

*Solution by Paul S. Bruckman, Fair Oaks, CA*

We recall or indicate (without proof) some of the basic definitions and properties of the Pell and "modified Pell" numbers:

$$P_n \equiv \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(\alpha^n - \beta^n); \quad Q_n \equiv \frac{1}{2}(\alpha^n + \beta^n), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (1)$$

where  $\alpha \equiv 1 + \sqrt{2}$ ,  $\beta \equiv 1 - \sqrt{2}$ .

$$P_{n+2} = 2P_{n+1} + P_n; \quad Q_{n+2} = 2Q_{n+1} + Q_n. \quad (2)$$

$$P_n \text{ and } Q_n \text{ are increasing with } n, \text{ except for } Q_0 = Q_1 = 1; \\ P_n \text{ and } Q_n \text{ are positive, except for } P_0 = 0. \quad (3)$$

$$P_u | P_v \text{ iff } u | v; \quad Q_u | Q_v \Rightarrow u | v. \quad (4)$$

Setting  $u = 2$ , we see that  $P_n$  is even iff  $n$  is even.

$$Q_n^2 - 2P_n^2 = (-1)^n; \text{ hence, } Q_n \text{ is odd for all } n. \quad (5)$$

$$P_{(a+1)b} + P_{(a-1)b} = 2P_b Q_{ab}; \quad Q_{(a+1)b} - Q_{(a-1)b} = 2Q_b Q_{ab}, \text{ if } b \text{ is odd.} \quad (6)$$

$$P_n + P_{n-1} = Q_n. \quad (7)$$

$$P_{2m} + P_{2n} = \begin{cases} 2P_{m+n}Q_{m-n}, & \text{if } m+n \text{ is even;} \\ 2P_{m-n}Q_{m+n}, & \text{if } m+n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases} \quad (8)$$

Most of these identities and properties follow readily from the definitions in (1), or are obtainable from the abundant literature on these sequences. Given two positive integers  $m$  and  $n$ , we define  $s \equiv m + n$  and  $d \equiv m - n$ , where without loss of generality, we can assume  $m \geq n$ . We first note that there is an error in the statement of the problem; the first part of the problem should say:

$$H_m + H_n = P_k \text{ if and only if } m = n, \text{ in which case } k = 2n. \quad (9)$$

Proof of Part 1: The proposed equation is equivalent to the following:

$$P_{2m} + P_{2n} = 2P_k. \quad (10)$$

Hence,  $P_k$  is the arithmetic mean of  $P_{2m}$  and  $P_{2n}$ . Since the  $P_i$ 's are increasing with  $i$  and since  $m \geq n$ , this implies:  $2n \leq k \leq 2m$ . We consider two possibilities:  $m + n$  is even or  $m + n$  is odd.

(a)  $s$  is even: Then, using (8), we must solve  $P_k = P_s Q_d$ . Thus, from (4),  $s | k$ , or  $k = rs$  for some  $r \geq 1$ . Since  $2n \leq r(m + n) \leq 2m$ , we must have  $r = 1$ ; hence, since  $P_s > 0$ , we must have  $Q_d = 1$  and  $d = 0$  or  $1$ . Since  $d$  is even,  $d = 0$ , i.e.,  $m = n$ , so  $k = 2n$ . This is the only solution of (10) in this case.

(b)  $s$  is odd: Again using (8), we are, therefore, required to solve  $P_k = P_d Q_s$ . Hence, again using (4),  $d | k$ , or  $k = rd$  for some  $r \geq 1$ . If  $r$  is even, so is  $k$ ; therefore,  $P_k$  [using (4)]. But  $d$  is odd; hence,  $P_d$  and  $Q_s$  are odd [by (4) and (5)], making it impossible for  $P_k$  to be even. This contradiction shows that  $r$  must be odd. Incidentally, this also shows that  $k$  must be odd. If  $r = 1$ , then (since  $d \geq 1$ ) we have  $Q_s = 1$  and  $s = 0$  or  $1$ , which is impossible, because  $s \geq 3$ . Therefore,  $r$  must be odd and greater than 2. Now the assumed equation implies

$$P_k = P_{rd} = P_d Q_s = 2P_d Q_{(r-1)d} - P_{(r-2)d},$$

using the first part of (6). Since  $r > 2$  and  $d \geq 1$ ,

$$P_{(r-2)d} > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad P_d \geq 1.$$

Hence,  $P_d Q_s < 2P_d Q_{(r-1)d}$ , which implies

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

$$Q_s < 2Q_{(r-1)d} < Q_{(r-1)d+1},$$

using (2). Then, by the property in (3),  $s < (r-1)d + 1$ , or equivalently,  $2m \leq k$ . However, since  $2n \leq k \leq 2m$ , this implies that  $k = 2m$ , i.e.,  $k$  is even: CONTRADICTION! Therefore, no solution of (10) exists in this case. This establishes (9).

Proof of Part 2: We see from (7) that the proposed equation is equivalent to

$$P_{2m} + P_{2n} = 2Q_k. \quad (11)$$

We again consider two cases:  $s$  is even or  $s$  is odd.

(a)  $s$  is even: Then, using (8), we are required to solve  $Q_k = P_s Q_d$ . Since  $s$  is even, so is  $P_s$ , hence  $Q_k$ . However, this is impossible, since  $Q_k$  is odd for all  $k$ . This contradiction eliminates any solutions in this case.

(b)  $s$  is odd: Now we are required to solve  $Q_k = P_d Q_s$ . Using (4), we have  $s|k$ , or  $k = rs$  for some  $r \geq 1$ . If  $r = 1$ , then  $Q_k = Q_s > 0$ , so  $P_d = 1$ , implying that  $k = 1$ . Then,  $m = n + 1$  and  $k = 2n + 1$ . This is a solution to equation (11). Suppose  $r \geq 2$ . Then, since  $Q_{rs} - Q_{(r-2)s} = 2Q_s Q_{(r-1)s}$  [from (6)], we have

$$Q_k = Q_{rs} = P_d Q_s > 2Q_s Q_{(r-1)s},$$

implying that  $P_d > 2Q_{(r-1)s}$ . But clearly  $2Q_n > P_n$  for all  $n$  [using (7)]. Thus,  $P_d > P_{(r-1)s}$ , which implies  $d > (r-1)s$ , i.e.,  $(m-n) > (r-1)(m+n)$ . This can be true only if  $r = 1$ , which contradicts the hypothesis that  $r \geq 2$ .

Hence,  $H_m + H_n = Q_k$  if and only if  $m = n + 1$ , where  $k = 2n + 1$ . Q.E.D.

Also solved by L. Kuipers.

◆◆◆◆

## SUSTAINING MEMBERS

|                      |                 |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| *A.L. Alder          | H. Diehl        | S.D. Moore, Jr. |
| S. Ando              | J.L. Ercolano   | K. Nagasaka     |
| *J. Arkin            | D.R. Farmer     | F.J. Osslander  |
| B.I. Arthur, Jr.     | F.F. Frey, Jr.  | S. Rabinowitz   |
| L. Bankoff           | C.L. Gardner    | E.M. Restrepo   |
| C.A. Barefoot        | A.A. Gioia      | E.D. Robinson   |
| Frank Bell           | R.M. Giuli      | S.E. Schloth    |
| M. Berg              | I.J. Good       | J.A. Schumaker  |
| J.G. Bergart         | *H.W. Gould     | H.G. Simms      |
| G. Bergum            | W.E. Greig      | J. Sjoberg      |
| G. Berzsenyi         | H.E. Heatherly  | L. Somer        |
| *M. Bicknell-Johnson | A.P. Hillman    | M.N.S. Swamy    |
| C. Bridger           | *A.F. Horadam   | L. Taylor       |
| Br. A. Brousseau     | F.T. Howard     | *D. Thoro       |
| J.L. Brown, Jr.      | R.J. Howell     | R. Vogel        |
| P.S. Bruckman        | R.P. Kelisky    | C.C. Volpe      |
| P.F. Byrd            | C.H. Kimberling | M. Waddill      |
| G.D. Chakerian       | J. Lahr         | *L.A. Walker    |
| J.W. Creely          | *C.T. Long      | J.E. Walton     |
| P.A. DeCaux          | *J. Maxwell     | G. Weekly       |
| M.J. DeLeon          | L. Miller       | R.E. Whitney    |
| J. Desmond           | M.G. Monzingo   | B.E. Williams   |

\*Charter Members

## INSTITUTIONAL MEMBERS

THE BAKER STORE EQUIPMENT  
COMPANY  
*Cleveland, Ohio*

CALIFORNIA STATE UNIVERSITY,  
SACRAMENTO  
*Sacramento, California*

GENERAL BOOK BINDING COMPANY  
*Chesterland, Ohio*

PRINCETON UNIVERSITY  
*Princeton, New Jersey*

SAN JOSE STATE UNIVERSITY  
*San Jose, California*

SCIENTIFIC ENGINEERING  
INSTRUMENTS, INC.  
*Sparks, Nevada*

TRI STATE UNIVERSITY  
*Angola, Indiana*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA,  
SANTA CRUZ  
*Santa Cruz, California*

UNIVERSITY OF GEORGIA  
*Athens, Georgia*

UNIVERSITY OF REDLANDS  
*Redlands, California*

UNIVERSITY OF SANTA CLARA  
*Santa Clara, California*

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
*Toronto, Canada*

WASHINGTON STATE UNIVERSITY  
*Pullman, Washington*

JOVE STATISTICAL TYPING SERVICE  
2088 Orestes Way  
Campbell, California 95008

## PURPOSE

The primary function of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is to serve as a focal point for widespread interest in the Fibonacci and related numbers, especially with respect to new results, research proposals, challenging problems, and innovative proofs of old ideas.

## EDITORIAL POLICY

**THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** seeks articles that are intelligible yet stimulating to its readers, most of whom are university teachers and students. These articles should be lively and well motivated, with new ideas that develop enthusiasm for number sequences or the exploration of number facts. Illustrations and tables should be wisely used to clarify the ideas of the manuscript. Unanswered questions are encouraged, and a complete list of references is absolutely necessary.

## SUBMITTING AN ARTICLE

Articles should be submitted in the format of the current issues of the **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**. They should be typewritten or reproduced typewritten copies, that are clearly readable, double spaced with wide margins and on only one side of the paper. The full name and address of the author must appear at the beginning of the paper directly under the title. Illustrations should be carefully drawn in India ink on separate sheets of bond paper or vellum, approximately twice the size they are to appear in print.

Two copies of the manuscript should be submitted to: **GERALD E. BERGUM, EDITOR, THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY, DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, SOUTH DAKOTA STATE UNIVERSITY, BOX 2220, BROOKINGS, SD 57007-1297.**

Authors are encouraged to keep a copy of their manuscripts for their own files as protection against loss. The editor will give immediate acknowledgment of all manuscripts received.

## SUBSCRIPTIONS, ADDRESS CHANGE, AND REPRINT INFORMATION

Address all subscription correspondence, including notification of address change, to: **RICHARD VINE, SUBSCRIPTION MANAGER, THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION, UNIVERSITY OF SANTA CLARA, SANTA CLARA, CA 95053.**

Requests for reprint permission should be directed to the editor. However, general permission is granted to members of The Fibonacci Association for noncommercial reproduction of a limited quantity of individual articles (in whole or in part) provided complete references is made to the source.

Annual domestic Fibonacci Association membership dues, which include a subscription to **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**, are \$25 for Regular Membership, \$35 for Sustaining Membership, and \$65 for Institutional Membership; foreign rates, which are based on international mailing rates, are somewhat higher than domestic rates; please write for details. **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is published each February, May, August and November.

All back issues of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** are available in microfilm or hard copy format from **UNIVERSITY MICROFILMS INTERNATIONAL, 300 NORTH ZEEB ROAD, DEPT. P.R., ANN ARBOR, MI 48106.** Reprints can also be purchased from **UMI CLEARING HOUSE** at the same address.

1984 by

© The Fibonacci Association

All rights reserved, including rights to this journal issue as a whole and, except where otherwise noted, rights to each individual contribution.